



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**2 Corinthians**

**Version 65**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 65

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 40

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 39

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-08-03

**Version:** 2.1.28

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-08-03

**Version:** 0.28

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 32

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 35

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 17

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b> .....	<b>10</b>
2 Corinthians .....	10
Introduction to 2 Corinthians .....	11
2 Corinthians 1 .....	13
2 Corinthians 2 .....	46
2 Corinthians 3 .....	69
2 Corinthians 4 .....	106
2 Corinthians 5 .....	137
2 Corinthians 6 .....	165
2 Corinthians 7 .....	193
2 Corinthians 8 .....	210
2 Corinthians 9 .....	235
2 Corinthians 10 .....	254
2 Corinthians 11 .....	275
2 Corinthians 12 .....	313
2 Corinthians 13 .....	352
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b> .....	<b>367</b>
Abstract Nouns .....	368
Active or Passive .....	370
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information .....	373
Double Negatives .....	376
Doublet .....	379
Ellipsis .....	381
Exclamations .....	384
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	386
Forms of You .....	388
Go and Come .....	389
Hendiadys .....	391
How to Translate Names .....	394
Hyperbole .....	398
Idiom .....	402
Irony .....	404
Litotes .....	407
Merism .....	409
Metaphor .....	411
Metonymy .....	417
Parallelism .....	419
Personification .....	422
Rhetorical Question .....	424
Synecdoche .....	427
Textual Variants .....	429
Translating Son and Father .....	431
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b> .....	<b>433</b>
Abraham, Abram .....	434
afflict, affliction, distress .....	435
age, aged .....	436
Almighty .....	437

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	438
ambassador, representative	439
amen, truly	440
angel, archangel	441
anguish	443
anoint, anointed, anointing	444
apostle, apostleship	445
armor, armory	446
Asia	447
assign, assigned, assignment, reassign	448
authority	449
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	450
basket, basketfuls	451
bear, bearer, carry	452
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	453
beloved	456
bless, blessed, blessing	457
boast, boastful	459
body	460
bold, boldness, emboldened	461
bread	462
brother	463
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	464
call, call out	465
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	467
caught up	468
children, child, offspring	469
Christ, Messiah	471
church, Church	473
clean, wash	475
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	477
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	478
command, commandment	479
companion, fellow worker, friend	480
compassion, compassionate	481
condemn, condemned, condemnation	482
confess, confession	483
confidence, confident	484
confirm, confirmation, legal	485
conscience	486
Corinth, Corinthians	487
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved	488
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	489
covenant	491
create, created, creation, creator	493
crucify, crucified	494
cut off, cut down	495
Damascus	496
darkness	497
day	498
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh	499
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	500

delight .....	501
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	502
descend, descendant .....	503
desert, wilderness .....	504
devour .....	505
die, dead, deadly, death .....	506
disciple .....	508
discipline, self-discipline .....	510
dishonor, dishonorable .....	511
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious .....	512
divine .....	513
earth, land .....	514
endure, endurance .....	515
enslave, slave, bondservant, bound .....	516
envy, covet .....	517
epistle, letter .....	518
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	519
Eve .....	521
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	522
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	524
exhort, exhortation .....	525
face, facial .....	526
faith .....	528
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	529
famine .....	531
fast, fasting .....	532
favor, favorable, favoritism .....	533
fear, afraid, frighten .....	534
fellowship .....	535
flesh .....	536
fool, foolish, folly .....	537
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .....	538
forsake, forsaken, leave .....	540
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty .....	541
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	542
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	544
Gentile .....	545
gift .....	546
glory, glorious, glorify .....	547
God .....	549
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	551
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	553
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness .....	555
good news, gospel .....	557
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	559
gossip, gossips, talk nonsense .....	561
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha .....	562
grace, gracious .....	563
groan .....	564
hand .....	565
hard, harden, hardness .....	567
harvest, reap .....	568

heart	569
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	570
Hebrew	572
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	573
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	575
hope, hoped	577
hour	578
house, household	579
humble, humbled, humility	580
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	581
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	582
Israel, Israelites	583
it is written	585
jealous, jealousy	586
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	587
Jew, Jewish	589
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	590
Judea, Judah	592
judge, judgment	593
kind [NOT kindness]	595
king, kingship	596
kiss	597
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	598
labor, laborer, work, hard work	600
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	601
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness	603
life, live, living, alive	605
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten	607
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	608
lord, Lord, master, sir	609
love, beloved	611
Macedonia	613
meek, meekness	614
mercy, merciful	615
messenger	617
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	618
miracle, wonder, sign	619
Moses	621
mourn, mourner, weeping	622
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	623
obey, keep	624
patient, patience, impatient	625
Paul, Saul	626
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	628
people of God	629
people, people group	630
perish	632
persecute	633
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow	634
pledge, pledged	635
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	636
power, powerful, powerfully	637

praise, praised, praiseworthy .....	639
pray, prayer .....	640
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	641
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	643
profit, profitable, unprofitable .....	644
promise, promised .....	645
proud, pride, prideful .....	646
puffed up .....	648
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished .....	649
pure, purify, purification .....	651
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	652
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	654
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation .....	656
repent, repentance .....	657
report, reported, tell, reputation .....	659
rest, rested, restless .....	660
reveal, revealed, revelation .....	661
reward, prize, deserve .....	662
right hand .....	663
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	665
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader .....	667
saint .....	668
Satan, devil, evil one .....	669
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	671
seal, sealed, unsealed .....	673
seed, semen .....	674
seek, search, look for .....	675
seize, seizure, capture .....	676
send, sent, send out .....	677
serpent, snake, viper .....	678
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	679
set apart .....	681
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication .....	682
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	683
sign, proof, reminder .....	685
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	687
slander, slanderers, revile, insult .....	689
son .....	690
Son of God, the Son .....	692
sons of God, children of God .....	694
soul, self, person .....	695
spirit, wind, breath .....	696
stone, stoning .....	698
strength, strengthen, strong .....	699
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel .....	701
stumbling block, stone of stumbling .....	702
submit, submission, in submission .....	703
suffer, suffering .....	704
temple, house, house of God .....	706
tent, tentmakers .....	708
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire .....	709
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	710



thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits .....	712
thorn, thorn bush, thistle .....	713
time, untimely, date .....	714
Timothy .....	715
Titus .....	716
to minister, ministry .....	717
torment, tormented, tormentors .....	718
tremble, stagger, shake .....	719
trespass .....	720
tribulation, distresses, trouble .....	721
Troas .....	722
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity .....	723
true, truth .....	724
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	726
turn, turn away, turn back, return .....	727
understand, understanding, thinking .....	729
veil, veiled, unveiled .....	730
virgin, virginity .....	731
vision, envision .....	732
walk, walked .....	733
will of God .....	734
wise, wisdom .....	735
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... ..	736
work, works, deeds .....	738
world, worldly .....	739
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless .....	740
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful .....	741
year .....	742
yoke, yoked, tied .....	743
zeal, zealous .....	744
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>745</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	745
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	751
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .....	752
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	753
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	753
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors .....	754



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **2 Corinthians**

## Introduction to 2 Corinthians

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of 2 Corinthians

Paul thanks God for the Corinthian Christians (1:1-11)

Paul explains his conduct and his ministry (1:12-7:16)

Paul speaks about contributing money for the Jerusalem church (8:1-9:15)

Paul defends his authority as an apostle (10:1-13:10)

Paul gives final greetings and encouragement (13:11-14)

#### Who wrote the Book of 2 Corinthians?

Paul was the author. He was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

Paul started the church in Corinth. He was staying in the city of Ephesus when he wrote this letter.

#### What is the Book of 2 Corinthians about?

In 2 Corinthians, Paul continued to write about the conflicts among the Christians in the city of Corinth. It is clear in this letter that the Corinthians had obeyed his previous instructions to them. In 2 Corinthians, Paul encouraged them to live in a way that would please God.

Paul also wrote to assure them that Jesus Christ sent him as an apostle to preach the Gospel. Paul wanted them to understand this, because a group of Jewish Christians opposed what he was doing. They claimed Paul was not sent by God and he was teaching a false message. This group of Jewish Christians wanted Gentile Christians to obey the law of Moses.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Second Corinthians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Second Letter to the Church in Corinth." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What was the city of Corinth like?

Corinth was a major city located in ancient Greece. Because it was near the Mediterranean Sea, many travelers and traders came to buy and sell goods there. This resulted in the city having people from many different cultures. The city was famous for having people who lived in immoral ways. The people worshipped Aphrodite, the Greek goddess of love. As part of the ceremonies honoring Aphrodite, her worshipers had sexual intercourse with temple prostitutes.

## What did Paul mean by “false apostles” (11:13)?

These were Jewish Christians. They taught that Gentile Christians had to obey the law of Moses in order to follow Christ. Christian leaders had met in Jerusalem and decided on the matter (See: Acts 15). However, it is clear that there were still some groups that disagreed with what the leaders in Jerusalem decided.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. Also, the word “you” is almost always plural and refers to the believers in Corinth. There are two exceptions to this: 6:2 and 12:9. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in 2 Corinthians in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles: \* Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the fact that God considers Christians to be sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another related fact is that God is perfect and faultless. A third fact is that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones,” or “holy people.” \* The meaning in most passages in 2 Corinthians is a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “believer” or “believers.” (See: 1:1; 8:4; 9:1, 12; 13:13) \* Sometimes the meaning in the passage implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “set apart,” “dedicated to,” “reserved for,” or “sanctified.”

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

### What did Paul mean by expressions like “in Christ” and “in the Lord”?

This kind of expression occurs in 1:19, 20; 2:12, 17; 3:14; 5:17, 19, 21; 10:17; 12:2, 19; and 13:4. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union with Christ and the believers. At the same time, he often intended other meanings as well. See, for example, “A door was opened for me in the Lord,” (2:12) where Paul specifically meant that a door was opened for Paul by the Lord.

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

### What does it mean to be a “new creation” in Christ (5:17)?

Paul’s message was that God makes Christians part of a “new world” when a person believes in Christ. God gives a new world of holiness, peace, and joy. In this new world, believers have a new nature that has been given them by the Holy Spirit. Translators should try to express this idea.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of 2 Corinthians?

- “and in your love for us” (8:7). Many versions, including the ULT and UST, read this way. However, many other versions read, “and in our love for you.” There is strong evidence that each reading is original. Translators should probably follow the reading preferred by other versions in their region.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

## 2 Corinthians 1

### 2 Corinthians 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The first paragraph reflects a common way to begin a letter in the ancient Near East.

#### Special Concepts

##### Paul's integrity

People were criticizing Paul and saying he was not sincere. He refutes them by explaining his motives for what he was doing.

##### Comfort

Comfort is a major theme of this chapter. The Holy Spirit comforts Christians. The Corinthians probably were afflicted and needed to be comforted.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

Paul uses two rhetorical questions to defend himself against a charge of not being sincere. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### We

Paul uses the pronoun "we". This likely represents at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

##### Guarantee

Paul says the Holy Spirit is the guarantee, which means pledge or down-payment, of a Christian's eternal life. Christians are securely saved. But they will not experience all of God's given promises until after they die. The Holy Spirit is a personal guarantee that this will happen. This idea comes from a business term. A person gives some valuable item to another person as a "guarantee" that they will repay money. (See: [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))



## **2 Corinthians 1:1**

## General Information:

After Paul's greeting to the church in Corinth, he writes about suffering and comfort through Jesus Christ. Timothy is with him as well. The word "you" throughout this letter refers to the people of the church in Corinth and to the rest of the Christians in that area. Possibly Timothy writes on parchment paper the words that Paul says.

## Paul ... to the church of God that is in Corinth

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. Alternate translation: "I, Paul ... wrote this letter to you, the church of God that is in Corinth"

## Timothy {our} brother (ULT)

## Timothy our brother, write this letter to you (UST)

The word **our** indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew **Timothy** and considered him to be their spiritual **brother**.

## of Achaia (ULT)

## region of Achaia (UST)

**Achaia** is the name of a Roman province in the southern part of modern-day Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- an apostle
- Corinth
- to...saints
- of Christ Jesus
- of Christ
- the} will of God
- of God
- of God (2)
- Timothy
- brother
- to...church

## Translation Words - UST

- I, Paul
- Timothy
- come together as
- the city of Corinth
- the...people whom God has set apart for himself

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by {the} will of God, and Timothy {our} brother, to the church of God that is in Corinth, and to all the saints being in the whole of Achaia.

## UST

<sup>1</sup> I, Paul, together with Timothy our brother, write this letter to you. The Messiah Jesus sent me to serve him and to obey God's will. We are sending this letter to those who come together as God's people in the city of Corinth; we are also sending it to the all the Messiahians who live in the region of Achaia—people whom God has set apart for himself.



- our brother, write this letter to you
- The Messiah Jesus
- The Messiah
- sent me to serve him
- and to obey...God's...will
- God's
- God's people (2)

## 2 Corinthians 1:2

**Grace to you and peace (ULT)**  
**May God give you the free gifts of his love and peace (UST)**

This is a common greeting that Paul uses in his letters.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Grace
- peace
- God...Father
- the Lord
- the Lord Jesus Christ
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- May God give...the free gifts of his love
- peace
- God...Father
- the Lord
- the Lord Jesus the Messiah
- the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> May God give you the free gifts of his love and peace—these things that come from God our Father and from the Lord Jesus the Messiah.



## **2 Corinthians 1:3**

**Blessed {be} the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the God and Father (ULT)**  
**the God and Father (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God, who is the Father"

**the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort (ULT)**  
**he is the one who does us acts of kindness and who always comforts us (UST)**

These two phrases express the same idea in two different ways. Both phrases refer to God. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort (ULT)**  
**he is the one who does us acts of kindness and who always comforts us (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the words **mercies** and **all comfort** describe the character of **Father** and **God**. (2) the words **Father** and **God** refer to one who is the source of **mercies** and **all comfort**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {be}](#)
- [God and Father](#)
- [Father \(2\)](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [of mercies](#)
- [the God \(2\)](#)
- [of...comfort](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [May we always praise](#)
- [God and Father](#)
- [he is \(2\)](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [does us acts of kindness](#)
- [who \(2\)](#)
- [comforts us](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [Blessed {be}](#) the [God and Father](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#), the [Father of mercies](#) and the [God](#) of all [comfort](#),

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [May we always praise](#) the [God and Father](#) of our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#)—[he is](#) the one who [does us acts of kindness](#) and [who](#) always [comforts us](#).

## 2 Corinthians 1:4

**who comforts us in all our affliction (ULT)  
comforts us when we go through any painful  
trial...our lives (UST)**

Here, **us** and **our** include the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who comforts](#)
- [to comfort](#)
- [comfort](#)
- [we...are comforted](#)
- [affliction](#)
- [tribulation](#) (2)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [comforts](#)
- [comfort](#)
- [comfort](#)
- [His comfort heals](#)
- [painful trial](#)
- [others...who are suffering](#) (2)
- [His comfort heals](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> the one [who comforts](#) us in all our [affliction](#), so that we are able [to comfort](#) those {who are} in every [tribulation](#) with the [comfort](#) with which we ourselves [are comforted](#) by [God](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> God [comforts](#) us when we go through any [painful trial](#). [His comfort heals](#) our lives so we can [comfort others](#) with that very same [comfort](#) to people [who are suffering](#).

## 2 Corinthians 1:5

**For just as the sufferings of Christ abound toward us (ULT)**

**Just as we experience the sufferings of the Messiah which are beyond all measure...that (UST)**

Paul speaks of the **sufferings of Christ** as if they were objects that could increase in number. Alternate translation: "For just as Christ suffered greatly for our sake" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the sufferings of Christ (ULT)**  
**the sufferings of the Messiah (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the **sufferings** that Paul and Timothy experience because they preach the message about Christ. (2) the **sufferings** that Christ experienced on their behalf.

**abounds...our comfort (ULT)**  
**cannot be measured...we...experience...comfort (UST)**

Paul speaks of **comfort** as if it were an object that could increase in size. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- sufferings
- of Christ
- Christ (2)
- abound
- abounds (2)
- comfort

### Translation Words - UST

- Just as...experience
- sufferings
- the Messiah
- Messiah (2)
- beyond all measure
- cannot be measured (2)
- experience...comfort

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For just as the sufferings of Christ abound toward us, in the same way also our comfort abounds through Christ.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Just as we experience the sufferings of the Messiah which are beyond all measure, we also experience through the Messiah comfort that cannot be measured.

## 2 Corinthians 1:6

### But if we are afflicted (ULT) So whenever we experience sufferings (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Paul and Timothy, but not to the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### But if we are afflicted (ULT) So whenever we experience sufferings (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But if people afflict us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### if we are comforted (ULT) Whenever God comforts us (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if God comforts us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### your comfort that results

Alternate translation: "you experience effective comfort"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we are afflicted](#)
- [comfort](#)
- [comfort \(2\)](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [we are comforted](#)
- [endurance](#)
- [of...sufferings](#)
- [we...suffer](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we experience sufferings](#)
- [God may comfort you](#)
- [you can be comforted even more \(2\)](#)
- [rescue you from danger](#)
- [God comforts us](#)
- [to wait for God](#)
- [when you suffer](#)
- [we suffered](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But if [we are afflicted](#), {it is} for your [comfort](#) and [salvation](#); if [we are comforted](#), {it is} for your [comfort](#) {which} you are experiencing in [endurance](#) of the same [sufferings](#) that we ourselves also [suffer](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So whenever [we experience sufferings](#), it is so [God may comfort you](#) and [rescue you from danger](#). Whenever [God comforts us](#), it is so [you can be comforted even more](#), so he can teach you [to wait for God](#), [when you suffer](#) in the same way [we suffered](#).



## 2 Corinthians 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- hope
- knowing
- as
- of...sufferings
- of...comfort

### Translation Words - UST

- We are certain about what will happen to you
- We are certain about what will happen to you
- you suffer like we suffer
- you suffer like we suffer
- God will...comfort you

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> And our hope concerning you {is} firm, knowing that as you are partakers of the sufferings, in the same way also of the comfort.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> We are certain about what will happen to you; because you suffer like we suffer, God will also comfort you, as he does us.

## 2 Corinthians 1:8

**not...we do...want you to be ignorant (ULT)  
we want you to know...we want you to know (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... uninformed**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "we want you to know" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**that we were burdened excessively, beyond {our} ability (ULT)  
That trouble gave us such pain...we could not bear it (UST)**

Paul and Timothy refer to their emotions of despair being like a heavy weight they have to carry. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**excessively...we were burdened (ULT)  
such pain...not bear it (UST)**

The word **burdened** refers to the feeling of despair. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We were in complete despair" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to be ignorant
- brothers
- tribulation
- Asia
- we were burdened
- our} ability
- of life

### Translation Words - UST

- Brothers and sisters in the Messiah
- we want you to know
- trouble
- province of Asia
- we could
- not bear it
- We were almost certain that we were going to die

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, concerning the tribulation that happened to us in Asia, that we were burdened excessively, beyond {our} ability, so that we despaired even of life.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Brothers and sisters in the Messiah, we want you to know about the trouble we had in the province of Asia. That trouble gave us such pain that we could not bear it. We were almost certain that we were going to die.

## 2 Corinthians 1:9

**we ourselves have within ourselves the sentence of death (ULT)**

**They...pronounced the sentence of death on us; we were waiting to be killed (UST)**

Paul and Timothy are comparing their feeling of despair to that of someone condemned to die. Alternate translation: "we were in despair like someone who is condemned to die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**but in God (ULT)**  
**but on God (UST)**

The words "be putting our trust" are left out of this phrase. Alternate translation: "but instead, be putting our trust in God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**who raises the dead (ULT)**  
**who raises the dead and brings them back to life (UST)**

Here to raise is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "who causes the dead to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of death
- dead
- trusting
- God
- who raises

### Translation Words - UST

- of death
- dead and brings them back to life
- to rely
- God
- raises

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Indeed, we ourselves have within ourselves the sentence of death so that we would not be trusting in ourselves, but in God, who raises the dead,

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They pronounced the sentence of death on us; we were waiting to be killed. That sentence of death taught us not to rely on our own strength but on God, who raises the dead and brings them back to life.

## 2 Corinthians 1:10

### a deadly peril (ULT) dangers (UST)

Paul compares his feeling of despair as a result of the troubles that they experienced to a **deadly peril** or terrible danger. Alternate translation: “despair” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### and he will rescue us...continue to (ULT) and he promises to rescue us again...he will continue (UST)

Alternate translation: “he also will continue to rescue us”

### Translation Words - ULT

- rescued
- he will rescue us
- he...will...rescue us (2)
- a deadly peril
- we have set our hope

### Translation Words - UST

- rescued
- he promises to rescue us again
- to rescue us (2)
- dangers
- we have set our hope

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> who rescued us from so great a deadly peril, and he will rescue us—on whom we have set our hope that he also will continue to rescue us,

### UST

<sup>10</sup> But God rescued us from those terrible dangers, and he promises to rescue us again. On him we have set our hope that he will continue to rescue us.

## 2 Corinthians 1:11

**you also joining in helping in supplication on our behalf (ULT)**

**He will do this as you help us by praying for us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God will rescue us from danger as you, the people of the church of Corinth, also help us by praying with us"

**for the gracious gift to us (ULT)**  
**he has been so kind to us (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the gracious favor which God has given to us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in supplication](#)
- [for...gracious gift](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [praying](#)
- [he has been so kind](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> you also joining in helping [in supplication](#) on our behalf—so that thanks may be given through many on our behalf for the [gracious gift](#) to us by many {people}.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> He will do this as you help us by [praying](#) for us. Now many thank God because [he has been so kind](#) to us, since many have prayed for us.



## **2 Corinthians 1:12**

**our..our..we conducted ourselves (ULT)**  
**We can very happily say...we lived toward...the world as...We lived...in how we live (UST)**

In these verses Paul uses the words **our**, **we**, and **ourselves** to refer to himself and Timothy and possibly others who served with them. These words do not include the people he was writing to. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**For our boasting is this (ULT)**  
**We can very happily say...we lived toward...the world as (UST)**

The word **boasting** here is used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.

**the testimony of our conscience (ULT)**  
**We can very happily say...we lived toward...all people...We lived...the world as (UST)**

Paul speaks of not being guilty as if his **conscience** were a person that could testify. Alternate translation: “we know by our conscience” (See: [Personification](#))

**not in fleshly wisdom, but in {the} grace of God (ULT)**  
**in...that was a gift from him. We do not live in any way that the world values...Instead, God has made us honest and holy (UST)**

Here, **fleshly** represents human. Alternate translation: “We have not relied on human wisdom but on the grace of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [boasting](#)
- [testimony](#)
- [of...conscience](#)
- [world](#)
- [holiness](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of God \(2\)](#)
- [fleshly](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [the} grace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We can very happily say...we lived toward...the world as](#)
- [We can very happily say...we lived toward...the world as](#)
- [We do...live...any way that the world values](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For our [boasting](#) is this: the [testimony](#) of our [conscience](#), that we conducted ourselves in the [world](#) in [holiness](#) and sincerity [of God](#), and not in [fleshly wisdom](#), but in {[the](#)} [grace of God](#), and more abundantly toward you.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [We can very happily say](#) that we have [we lived toward](#) all people in [an honest](#) and sincere way. [We lived](#) in [the world as God's own people](#) and we have deep trust in God, [that was a gift from him](#). [We do not live](#) in [any way that the world values](#). [We do not listen](#) to the [world's wisdom](#) when we choose what we will do. Instead, [God has made us honest and holy](#) in how we live.



- We do...live...any way that the world values
- We do not listen...world's wisdom
- an honest
- We lived
- God's own people
- God has made us honest and holy (2)
- that was a gift from him

## 2 Corinthians 1:13

**For we write no other {things} to you other than what you read or also understand (ULT)  
You have read my letters. I have written them so you can understand them (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **no ... but**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "You can read and understand everything we write to you" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- understand
- you will understand
- I hope

### Translation Words - UST

- you can understand them
- understand us
- I hope

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For we write no other {things} to you other than what you read or also [understand](#), but [I hope](#) that [you will understand](#) until {the} end—

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You have read my letters. I have written them so [you can understand them](#). [I hope](#) someday you will fully [understand us](#),

## 2 Corinthians 1:14

### your boasting (ULT) very proud of you (UST)

The word **boasting** here is used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- you...understood
- boasting
- day
- day of...Lord
- of...Lord
- Jesus

#### Translation Words - UST

- You know
- already
- very proud
- day when...returns
- day when the Lord...returns
- Lord
- Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> just as you also understood us in part —so that we are your boasting, just as you also {are} ours, on the day of our Lord Jesus.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> You know a little about us already, but on the day when the Lord Jesus returns, I hope that you will be very proud of us in his presence, and we will be very proud of you.

## 2 Corinthians 1:15

### Connecting Statement:

Paul explains his sincere expectation with pure motives to come see the believers in Corinth after his first letter.

### with this confidence (ULT)

### I am so sure that this will be the case (UST)

The word **this** refers to Paul's previous comments about the Corinthians.

### you might have a second grace (ULT)

### previously...that you could benefit from two visits (UST)

Alternate translation: "you might benefit from me visiting you twice"

### Translation Words - ULT

- with...confidence
- a...grace

### Translation Words - UST

- I am so sure that this will be the case
- that you could benefit from

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And with this **confidence**, I was intending to come to you before so that you might have a second **grace** <sup>[1]</sup>,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> **I am so sure that this will be the case** that I previously wanted to come to you first, so **that you could benefit from** two visits.

## 2 Corinthians 1:16

**you into...to be sent ahead...Judea by (ULT)  
you...to...so you could send me on my way...  
Judea (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to assist me to continue on to Judea"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Macedonia
- Macedonia
- to be sent ahead
- Judea

### Translation Words - UST

- Macedonia
- there
- so you could send me on my way
- Judea

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> and to pass through you into Macedonia and to come to you again from Macedonia and to be sent ahead to Judea by you.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> I planned to see you both when I was on my way to Macedonia and then when I was coming back from there, so you could send me on my way to Judea.

## 2 Corinthians 1:17

### **I did not then act in fickleness, did I (ULT) My mind was made up...not (UST)**

Paul uses this question to emphasize he was sure about his decision to visit the Corinthians. The expected answer to the question is “no”. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “I was not hesitating.” or “I was confident in my decision.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### **Or what I intend, do I intend according to {the} flesh, so that there would be with me “Yes, yes” and “No, no (ULT) My mind was made up...that...I was...telling you “Yes” and then telling you “No.” I was not making my plans like unbelievers often make plans (UST)**

Paul uses this question to emphasize that his plans to visit the Corinthians were sincere. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “I do not plan things according to human standards, so that I would say “Yes, yes” and “No, no” at the same time.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### **Or what I intend, do I intend according to {the} flesh, so that there would be with me “Yes, yes” and “No, no (ULT) My mind was made up...that...I was...telling you “Yes” and then telling you “No.” I was not making my plans like unbelievers often make plans (UST)**

This means that Paul did not say both that he would visit and that he would not visit at the same time. Alternate translation: “I do not plan things according to fleshly planning, so that I say ‘Yes, I will certainly visit’ and ‘No, I will definitely not visit’ at the same time!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **so that there would be with me “Yes, yes” and “No, no (ULT) I was...telling you “Yes” and then telling you “No (UST)**

The words **yes** and **no** are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [the} flesh](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [unbelievers](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, {when} I was intending this, I did not then act in fickleness, did I? Or what I intend, do I intend according to {the} flesh, so that there would be with me “Yes, yes” and “No, no”?

### **UST**

<sup>17</sup> My mind was made up that this would be the plan. I was not telling you “Yes” and then telling you “No.” I was not making my plans like [unbelievers](#) often make plans.

## 2 Corinthians 1:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- is} faithful

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- is faithful in guiding us

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But God {is} faithful, so that our word to you is not "Yes" and "No."

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> But God is faithful in guiding us, and we do not confuse you, either. We are making our plans and staying with them.

## 2 Corinthians 1:19

**For the Son of God, Jesus Christ...was not “Yes” and “No,” but it has become “Yes” in him (ULT)**

**Our “Yes” comes from the Son of God, Jesus the Messiah...and there has never been any confusion in him—with him there is no “Yes and then No.” Instead, it has always been simply “Yes” in him (UST)**

Jesus says “Yes” concerning the promises of God, which means that he guarantees that they are true. Alternate translation: “For the Son of God, Jesus Christ ... does not say ‘Yes’ and ‘No’ concerning God’s promises. Instead, he always says ‘Yes.’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the...of God...Son (ULT)**

**Our “Yes” comes from the...of God...Son (UST)**

**Son of God** is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [who was proclaimed](#)
- [Timothy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Son](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [proclaimed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> For the [Son of God, Jesus Christ](#), the one [who was proclaimed](#) among you by us—by me and Silvanus and [Timothy](#)—was not “Yes” and “No,” but it has become “Yes” in him.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Our “Yes” comes from the [Son of God, Jesus the Messiah](#)—the one I and Silvanus and [Timothy proclaimed](#) to you; and there has never been any confusion in him—with him there is no “Yes and then No.” Instead, it has always been simply “Yes” in him.



## 2 Corinthians 1:20

**as many as...promises of God {are} “Yes” in him (ULT)**

**For...the promises of God are “Yes...his “Yes (UST)**

This means that Jesus guarantees all of the **promises of God**.  
 Alternate translation: “all the promises of God are guaranteed in Jesus Christ” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**are} “Yes” in him...through him (ULT)**

**are “Yes...his “Yes...from him (UST)**

Both occurrences of the word **him** refer to Jesus Christ.

### Translation Words - ULT

- promises
- of God
- to God
- Amen
- his} glory

### Translation Words - UST

- the promises
- of God
- about God’s
- honor
- It is True! Yes

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For as many as [promises of God](#) {are} “Yes” in him, so also through him the “Amen” {is} through us [to God](#) for {his} glory.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> For [the promises of God](#) are “Yes” because they come from him. And we add our confirmation to his “Yes.” And we say [about God’s honor](#): “It is True! Yes!”

## 2 Corinthians 1:21

### Now God is the one who establishes us with you

This could mean: (1) Paul is saying that **God** confirms the relationship of him and his team with each other because they are **in Christ**. (2) Paul is saying that **God** confirms the relationship of him and his team, and the Corinthians, with **Christ**.

### us...anointed (ULT) us...sends us out to tell people the good news (UST)

This could mean: (1) he sent us to preach the gospel. (2) he chose us to be his people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- who establishes
- in Christ
- Christ
- anointed
- is} God

### Translation Words - UST

- It is God
- establishes...he
- in a relationship with Messiah
- a relationship with Messiah
- sends us out to tell people the good news

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now the one **who establishes** us with you **in Christ** and **anointed** us {is} **God**,

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> **It is God** who **establishes** us, together with you, **in a relationship with Messiah**. And **he** is the one who **sends us out to tell people the good news**.

## 2 Corinthians 1:22

**the one who also sealed us (ULT)**  
**He put his official seal on us, so people will know he approves of us (UST)**

Paul speaks of God showing that we belong to him as if God had put a mark on us as a sign that we belong to him. Alternate translation: “he has put his mark of ownership on us” or “he has shown that we belong to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**gave us the down payment of the Spirit in our hearts (ULT)**  
**he gave us the Spirit who lives within us, as an unbreakable promise that he will do even more things for us (UST)**

Here the word **hearts** refers to the innermost part of a person. Alternate translation: “gave us the Spirit to live within each of us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the down payment of the Spirit (ULT)**  
**the Spirit...as an unbreakable promise that he will do even more things for us (UST)**

The **Spirit** is spoken of as if he was a partial downpayment toward eternal life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who...sealed](#)
- [down payment](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [hearts](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He put his official seal](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [who lives within](#)
- [as an unbreakable promise that he will do even more things for us](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> the one who also [sealed](#) us and gave us the [down payment](#) of the [Spirit](#) in our [hearts](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [He put his official seal](#) on us, so people will know he approves of us. And he gave us the [Spirit who lives within](#) us, [as an unbreakable promise that he will do even more things for us](#).

## 2 Corinthians 1:23

**Now I invoke God as a witness to my soul (ULT)**

**May God himself assure you about my reason for...the...It was...me (UST)**

Here, to be a **witness** refers to a person telling what they have seen or heard in order to settle an argument. Alternate translation: "I ask God to show what I say is true"

**that sparing you (ULT)**  
**so that you would not have to face...giving correction to you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that I might not cause you more suffering"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [invoke](#)
- [God](#)
- [as a witness](#)
- [soul](#)
- [Corinth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [himself](#)
- [assure you about](#)
- [reason](#)
- [in Corinth](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now I [invoke God as a witness](#) to my [soul](#) that sparing you—I have not yet come to [Corinth](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> May [God himself assure you about](#) my [reason](#) for not coming to you, the [Messiahians in Corinth](#): It was so that you would not have to face me giving correction to you.

## 2 Corinthians 1:24

**your faith...we are fellow workers...for...joy (ULT)**

**you must trust in God...we want to work with you, so...have joy (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we are working with you so that you may have joy"

**the...you stand firm in...faith (ULT)**  
**in...can learn to trust God no matter what happens...trusting him (UST)**

Here, **stand firm** can refer to something that does not change.  
 Alternate translation: "remain firm in your faith" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- we lord it over
- faith
- in...faith
- fellow workers
- for...joy

### Translation Words - UST

- We are...masters who give you orders about how
- must trust in God
- trusting him
- we want to work with you, so
- have joy

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Not that we lord it over your faith, but we are fellow workers {for} your joy, for you stand firm in the faith.

1:15 <sup>[1]</sup> some ancient manuscripts read

### UST

<sup>24</sup> We are not like masters who give you orders about how you must trust in God. However, we want to work with you, so you can learn to trust God no matter what happens, and have joy in trusting him.

## 2 Corinthians 2

### 2 Corinthians 2 General Notes

### Special Concepts

#### Harsh writing

In this chapter, Paul refers to a letter he previously wrote to the Corinthians. That letter had a harsh and corrective tone. Paul probably wrote it after the letter known as First Corinthians and before this letter. He implies that the church had to rebuke an erring member. Paul is now encouraging them to be gracious to that person. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Aroma

A sweet aroma is a pleasing smell. Scripture often describes things that are pleasing to God as having a pleasing aroma.

## 2 Corinthians 2:1

### Connecting Statement:

Because of his great love for them, Paul makes it clear that his rebuke in his first letter to them (the rebuke of their acceptance of the sin of immorality) caused him pain as well as pain to the church people in Corinth and the immoral man.

**in sorrow (ULT)**

**In...painful (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in circumstances that would cause you pain"

### Translation Words - ULT

- I decided

### Translation Words - UST

- I decided this time

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For I decided this for myself, not to come to you again in sorrow.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the last visit I made to Corinth I know that I hurt you very much by what I said to you. I decided this time that I would not make another painful visit to you.

## 2 Corinthians 2:2

**For if I myself grieve you, then who {is} the one cheering me up, except the one being grieved by me (ULT)**

**I caused you much pain on my last visit, and the people who could cheer me up the most would be the same people whom I hurt when I was there (UST)**

Paul uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that neither he nor they would benefit if his coming to them would cause them pain. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "If I caused you pain, the only ones who could cheer me up would be the very ones whom I had hurt." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the one being grieved by me (ULT)  
would be the same people whom...I hurt when I was there (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the very one whom I had hurt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For if I myself grieve you, then who {is} the one cheering me up, except the one being grieved by me?

### UST

<sup>2</sup> I caused you much pain on my last visit, and the people who could cheer me up the most would be the same people whom I hurt when I was there.



## 2 Corinthians 2:3

### I wrote this same thing (ULT)

### I wrote...that letter to you (UST)

Paul is referring to another letter that he had written to the Corinthian Christians, but which no longer exists. Alternate translation: "I wrote as I did in my previous letter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### not...I might...have sorrow from {those} whom it is necessary for me to rejoice (ULT)

### not...you would...make me feel sad again—you, who should actually make me rejoice (UST)

Paul is speaking about the behavior of certain Corinthian believers who caused him emotional pain. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "those who should have made me rejoice might not hurt me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### my joy is {the joy} of all of you (ULT)

### we...have...to be joyful (UST)

Alternate translation: "what gives me joy is what gives you joy, too"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to rejoice
- joy
- having confidence

### Translation Words - UST

- make...rejoice
- we...have...to be joyful
- I was sure

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And I wrote this same thing so that, having come, I might not have sorrow from {those} whom it is necessary for me to rejoice, having confidence in all of you that my joy is {the joy} of all of you.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I wrote that letter to you so when I came to you, you would not make me feel sad again—you, who should actually make me rejoice! I was sure that we all have the reasons to be joyful.

## 2 Corinthians 2:4

### For...out of much tribulation (ULT) because I still had much hurt (UST)

Here the word **affliction** refers to emotional pain.

### anguish of heart (ULT) pain in my heart (UST)

Here the word **heart** refers to the location of the emotions. Alternate translation: “with extreme sorrow” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### through many tears (ULT) I cried many tears for you, and (UST)

Alternate translation: “with much crying”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tribulation](#)
- [anguish](#)
- [of heart](#)
- [you might know](#)
- [love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hurt](#)
- [pain](#)
- [in my heart](#)
- [to know](#)
- [I love](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For I wrote to you out of much [tribulation](#) and [anguish of heart](#), through many tears, not so that you would be grieved, but so that [you might know](#) the [love](#) that I have more abundantly for you.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> I wrote to you then because I still had much [hurt](#) and [pain in my heart](#)—I cried many tears for you, and I did not want to hurt you anymore. Instead, I want you [to know](#) how much [I love](#) all of you.

## 2 Corinthians 2:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I might...burden

### Translation Words - UST

- made...sad

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But if anyone has caused grief, he has not grieved {only} me, but in part—in order that I might not burden all of you.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> This person who fell into sin—he did not just make me sad by what he did; his sin made all of you sad.

## 2 Corinthians 2:6

### This punishment of that person by the majority is enough

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The punishment that the majority gave that person is sufficient" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word \**punishment*\*, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "The way that the majority has punished that person is enough" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### is} sufficient (ULT) was fair (UST)

Alternate translation: "is sufficient"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [punishment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and...punishment](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> This [punishment](#) on such a {person} by the majority {is} sufficient,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> We all agree what we should do about this man and his sin. He has now been punished by most of you and his [punishment](#) was fair.

## 2 Corinthians 2:7

**so that} such a {person} might not be overwhelmed in {his} excessive sorrow (ULT)  
If you do not forgive him, he may become so sad that he will begin to think that you will never forgive him (UST)**

This means to have a strong emotional response of too much sorrow. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We do not want too much sorrow to overwhelm him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should...forgive](#)
- [comfort {him}](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [need...and deal kindly with him](#)
- [to forgive him](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> so that, on the contrary, you should rather [forgive](#) and [comfort {him}](#) {so that} such a {person} might not be overwhelmed in {his} excessive sorrow.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> So now, instead of punishing him any longer, you [need to forgive him and deal kindly with him](#). If you do not forgive him, he may become so sad that he will begin to think that you will never forgive him.

## 2 Corinthians 2:8

### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the church in Corinth to show love and to forgive the person they have punished. He writes that he, also, has forgiven him.

**to reaffirm {your} love for him (ULT)**  
**tell him how much you love him (UST)**

This means that they are to confirm their **love** for this man in the presence of all of the believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I urge
- to reaffirm
- your} love

### Translation Words - UST

- In front of all the believers
- tell
- how much you love him

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So I urge you to reaffirm {your} love for him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> In front of all the believers, tell him how much you love him.

## 2 Corinthians 2:9

### you are obedient in all {things (ULT) would obey God...with...problem (UST)

This could mean: (1) the Corinthians **are obedient** to God **in everything**. (2) the Corinthians **are obedient in everything** that Paul has taught them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [I might know](#)
- [obedient](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [see...you...deal](#)
- [would obey God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Indeed, I also wrote for this reason: so that [I might know](#) your proof, whether you are [obedient](#) in all {things}.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> I wrote you to [see](#) if you [would obey God](#) and [deal](#) with this problem.

## 2 Corinthians 2:10

### is} for your sake (ULT) out of my love for you (UST)

This could mean: (1) they are forgiven out of Paul's love for them. (2) they are forgiven for their benefit.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- you forgive
- whom...have forgiven
- I...have forgiven (2)
- of Christ

#### Translation Words - UST

- you forgave
- have forgiven
- I have forgiven (2)
- I forgive as though the Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Now to whomever you forgive anything, I also {forgive}—for indeed the one whom I have forgiven (if I have forgiven anything), {is} for your sake in {the} presence of Christ,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> So the man you forgave, I also forgive. Whatever I have forgiven—even the smallest matters—I have forgiven out of my love for you, and I forgive as though the Messiah were standing in front of me.



## 2 Corinthians 2:11

### for we are not ignorant of his schemes (ULT) We know all about his tricks and his lies (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ignorant**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "For we know his plans well" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Satan](#)
- [we are...ignorant](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Satan](#)
- [We know all about his tricks and his lies](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> so that we would not be taken advantage of by [Satan](#), for [we are](#) not [ignorant](#) of his schemes.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> By forgiving this man, we made it so [Satan](#) could not trick us into doing something worse. [We know all about his tricks and his lies](#).

## 2 Corinthians 2:12

### Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the believers in Corinth by telling them of the opportunities he has had to preach the gospel in Troas and Macedonia.

**and a door for the gospel of Christ having been opened to me in {the} Lord (ULT)  
the Lord opened many ways for us to share the good news of...Messiah...the (UST)**

Paul speaks of his opportunity to preach the **gospel** as if it were a **door** through which he was allowed to walk. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and a door for the gospel of Christ having been opened to me in {the} Lord (ULT)  
the Lord opened many ways for us to share the good news of...Messiah...the (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Lord indeed opened a door to me to preach the gospel of Christ" or "The Lord gave me the opportunity to preach the gospel of Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Troas](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [in {the} Lord](#)
- [the} Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [share...good news](#)
- [Messiah...the](#)
- [city of Troas](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now having come to [Troas](#), and a door for the [gospel of Christ](#) having been opened to me [in {the} Lord](#),

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Even though [the Lord](#) opened many ways for us to [share](#) the [good news](#) of the [Messiah](#) in [the city of Troas](#),

## 2 Corinthians 2:13

### I had no relief in my spirit (ULT) was worried about (UST)

Alternate translation: "My mind was troubled" or "I was worried"

### my...brother Titus (ULT) was worried about...brother Titus (UST)

Paul speaks of **Titus** as his spiritual **brother**.

### So having said farewell to them (ULT) So I left the believers in Troas (UST)

Alternate translation: "So I left the people of Troas"

### Translation Words - ULT

- relief
- in...spirit
- brother
- Titus
- Macedonia

### Translation Words - UST

- was worried about
- was worried about
- brother
- Titus
- Macedonia to look for him

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> I had no relief in my spirit, as I did not find my brother Titus there. So having said farewell to them, I went on to Macedonia.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> I was worried about our brother Titus, because I did not find him there. So I left the believers in Troas and returned to Macedonia to look for him.

## 2 Corinthians 2:14

### God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph

Paul speaks of God as if he were a victorious general leading a victory parade and of himself and his coworkers as those who take part in that parade. This could mean: (1) God, who in Christ always causes us to share in his triumph. (2) God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph as those over whom he has gained victory. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**making known through us the aroma of the knowledge of him in every place (ULT)  
Through our lives and our message, everywhere we go, we are like those who have been near burning incense; but our fragrance does not come from real incense, but it comes from knowing...we know him we have his fragrant aroma (UST)**

Paul speaks of the **knowledge** of Christ as if it were incense that has a pleasing smell. Alternate translation: "He causes the knowledge of Christ to spread to everyone who hears us, just as the sweet smell of burning incense spreads to everyone near it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**making known...in...every place (ULT)  
we have...we are joined together with...everywhere we go, we are like those who have been near burning incense (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he spreads ... everywhere we go"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- in Christ
- Christ
- of...knowledge

### Translation Words - UST

- We thank God
- we are joined together with...Messiah, and the Messiah
- Messiah
- we know

### ULT

**14** But thanks {be} to God, always leading us in triumphal procession in Christ and making known through us the aroma of the knowledge of him in every place.

### UST

**14** We thank God that we are joined together with the Messiah, and the Messiah always leads us in his march of victory. Through our lives and our message, everywhere we go, we are like those who have been near burning incense; but our fragrance does not come from real incense, but it comes from knowing the Messiah, and because we know him we have his fragrant aroma.

## 2 Corinthians 2:15

**we are a fragrance of Christ to God (ULT)  
a sweet-smelling incense offered by Messiah  
to God, which spreads (UST)**

Paul speaks of his ministry as if it were the pleasing smell of a burnt offering that someone offers to **God**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we are a fragrance of Christ to God (ULT)  
a sweet-smelling incense offered by Messiah  
to God, which spreads (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the sweet aroma which is the knowledge of **Christ**. (2) the sweet aroma that **Christ** offers.

**those who are being saved (ULT)  
those who...are being saved (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "those whom God is saving" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Christ](#)
- [to God](#)
- [who are being saved](#)
- [who are perishing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a...offered by Messiah](#)
- [to God](#)
- [are being saved](#)
- [are being condemned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For we are a fragrance [of Christ to God](#) among those [who are being saved](#) and among those [who are perishing](#)—

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> For we are like a sweet-smelling incense [offered by Messiah to God](#), which spreads among those who [are being saved](#) and those who [are being condemned](#).



## **2 Corinthians 2:16**

## an aroma (ULT) aroma of the Messiah is like the smell (UST)

This refers back to [2 Corinthians 2:14](#), where Paul speaks of the knowledge of Christ as if it were incense that has a pleasing smell. Alternate translation: “the knowledge of Christ is an aroma” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## an aroma from death to death (ULT) aroma of the Messiah is like the smell of a dead person dying once again (UST)

This could mean: (1) the word **death** is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means “an aroma that causes death.” (2) this refers to an **aroma** of **death** that causes people to die. (See: [Doublet](#))

## to the ones (ULT) To those people whom God condemns to die (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to the ones whom God is saving” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## an aroma from life to life (ULT) they smell the Messiah, who is alive, coming to make them alive, too (UST)

This could mean: (1) the word **life** is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means “an aroma that gives life.” (2) this refers to an **aroma** of life that gives people **life**. (See: [Doublet](#))

## for these things, who {is} sufficient (ULT) Indeed, no one is able by himself to spread this fragrance (UST)

Paul uses this question to emphasize that no one is worthy to do the ministry that God has called them to do. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “No one is worthy of these things!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [death](#)
- [life](#)
- [life](#)
- [sufficient](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a dead person dying once again](#)
- [a dead person dying once again](#)
- [who is alive, coming to make them alive, too](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> to the ones indeed, an aroma from [death](#) to [death](#), but to the others, an aroma from [life](#) to [life](#). And for these things, who {is} [sufficient](#)?

### UST

<sup>16</sup> To those people whom God condemns to die, that aroma of the Messiah is like the smell of [a dead person dying once again](#). But to those whom God is rescuing—they smell the Messiah, [who is alive, coming to make them alive, too](#). Indeed, no one [is able by himself](#) to spread this fragrance!



- who is alive, coming to make them alive, too
- is able by himself



## **2 Corinthians 2:17**

**peddling the word of God (ULT)  
go from city to city selling the word of God for  
money (UST)**

Here, **word** is a metonym for "message." Alternate translation: "who sell God's message to make money" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**sincerity (ULT)  
to please God and we do what he wants (UST)**

Alternate translation: "pure motives"

**of God...we speak in the presence of...in Christ  
(ULT)  
of God...And we speak about the Messiah  
because we know...sees everything we do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we speak as people who are joined to Christ" or "we speak with the authority of Christ"

**in the presence of God (ULT)  
because we know God sees everything we do (UST)**

Paul and his coworkers preach the gospel with the awareness that **God** is watching them. Alternate translation: "we speak in the presence of God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [like](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [as](#) (3)
- [word of God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [word of God](#)
- [like them](#)
- [We work hard](#) (2)
- [and we announce the Messiah because we are joined](#) (3)
- [about the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [him](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)

**ULT**

17 For we are not [like](#) the many peddling the [word of God](#), but [as](#) from sincerity, but [as](#) from [God](#), we speak in the presence of [God in Christ](#).

**UST**

17 You know that many people go from city to city selling the [word of God](#) for money. But we are not [like them](#). [We work hard](#) to please God and we do what he wants. And we speak [about the Messiah](#) because we know [God](#) sees everything we do, [and we announce the Messiah because we are joined](#) to [him](#).

## 2 Corinthians 3

### 2 Corinthians 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Paul continues his defense. Paul views the Corinthian Christians as the proof of his work.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Law of Moses

Paul alludes to God giving the Ten Commandments on stone tablets. This represents the law of Moses. The law was good because it came from God. But God punished the Israelites because they disobeyed it. This chapter may be difficult for translators to understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [covenant](#) and [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphors

Paul uses many metaphors used in this chapter to explain complex spiritual truths. It is unclear whether this makes Paul's teachings easier or more difficult to understand. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “This is a covenant not of the letter but of the Spirit.”

Paul contrasts the old and new covenants. The new covenant is not a system of rules and regulations. Here, **Spirit** probably refers to the Holy Spirit. It may also refer to the new covenant being “spiritual” in nature. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

## 2 Corinthians 3:1

**Are we beginning to commend ourselves again (ULT)**

**You know us well, and you should trust us (UST)**

Paul uses this question to emphasize that they are not bragging about themselves. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We are not beginning to praise ourselves again!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Or we do not need, like some, letters of recommendation to you or from you, do we (ULT)**

**A stranger might need someone you know to write you a letter to introduce him to you, but you know us very well (UST)**

Paul used this question to express that the Corinthians already know about Paul and Timothy's good reputation. The question prompts a negative answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "We certainly do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people do!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**letters of recommendation (ULT)**  
**to write you a letter to introduce him (UST)**

This refers to **letters** that people write to introduce and give their approval of someone else.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [like](#)
- [letters](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [A stranger might need](#)
- [a letter](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Are we beginning to commend ourselves again? Or we do not need, [like](#) some, [letters](#) of recommendation to you or from you, do we?

### UST

<sup>1</sup> You know us well, and you should trust us. [A stranger might need](#) someone you know to write you [a letter](#) to introduce him to you, but you know us very well.

## 2 Corinthians 3:2

**You yourselves are our letter (ULT)**  
**You yourselves are like a letter that**  
**introduces us...because (UST)**

Paul speaks of the Corinthians as if they are a **letter** of recommendation. That they have become believers serves to validate Paul's ministry to others. Alternate translation: "You yourselves are like our letter of recommendation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**written in our hearts (ULT)**  
**to other people...who knows you can see how**  
**much you trust us (UST)**

Here the word **hearts** refers to their thoughts and emotions. This could mean: (1) Paul and his coworkers are sure about the Corinthians being their letter of recommendation. (2) Paul and his coworkers care very deeply for the Corinthians. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**written in our hearts (ULT)**  
**to other people...who knows you can see how much you trust us (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form with "Christ" as the implied subject, or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "which Christ has written on our hearts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**known and read by all men (ULT)**  
**everyone...can see how much you trust us (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that all people can know and read" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [letter](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [like a letter that introduces](#)
- [can see how much you trust us](#)
- [can see how much you trust us](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> You yourselves are our [letter](#) written in our [hearts](#), [known](#) and read by all men,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> You yourselves are [like a letter that introduces](#) us to other people, because everyone who knows you [can see how much you trust us](#).





## **2 Corinthians 3:3**

**you are a letter of Christ (ULT)**  
**The way you live is like a letter...the Messiah himself has written (UST)**

Paul clarifies that Christ is the one who has written the **letter**.  
 Alternate translation: “you are a letter that Christ has written” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having been administered by us (ULT)**  
**and that we brought to you (UST)**

Alternate translation: “brought by us”

**It was written not with ink ... on tablets of human hearts**

Paul clarifies that the Corinthians are like a spiritual letter, not like a letter that humans write with physical objects.

**not written with ink but with the Spirit of the living God (ULT)**  
**Of course, it is not a letter written with ink...it is a letter that the Spirit of the true God (UST)**

The verb “written” is implied in the second phrase. Alternate translation: “not written with ink, but written with the Spirit of the living God” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**not written with ink but with the Spirit of the living God (ULT)**  
**Of course, it is not a letter written with ink...it is a letter that the Spirit of the true God (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “not a letter that people wrote with ink but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not on tablets of stone but on tablets of hearts of flesh (ULT)**  
**or on stone tablets. No...has written on your own hearts (UST)**

The verb “written” is implied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: “not a letter that was written on stone tablets, but a letter that was written on tablets of human hearts” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**not on tablets of stone but on tablets of hearts of flesh (ULT)**  
**or on stone tablets. No...has written on your own hearts (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “not a letter that people engraved on stone tablets but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote on tablets of human hearts” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> making known that you are a letter of Christ having been administered by us, not written with ink but with the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of hearts of flesh.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> The way you live is like a letter that the Messiah himself has written and that we brought to you. Of course, it is not a letter written with ink or on stone tablets. No, it is a letter that the Spirit of the true God has written on your own hearts.

## **tablets of hearts of flesh (ULT) has written...your own hearts (UST)**

Paul speaks of their **hearts** as if they are flat pieces of stone or clay upon which people engraved letters. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- making known
- a letter
- of Christ
- having been administered
- with the Spirit of the living God
- of hearts

### **Translation Words - UST**

- like a letter
- that
- the Messiah himself has written
- and that we brought to you
- the Spirit of the true God
- has written...your own hearts

## 2 Corinthians 3:4

**Now we have such confidence (ULT)  
I can confidently write these things about...  
work we have done among you (UST)**

This refers to what Paul has just said. His **confidence** comes from knowing that the Corinthians are the validation of his ministry before God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- confidence
- Christ
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- I can confidently write these things about
- God knows that what I write is true
- it is Messiah who has

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now we have such **confidence** through **Christ** toward **God**.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> **I can confidently write these things about** the work we have done among you. **God knows that what I write is true** because **it is Messiah who has** worked in us.

## 2 Corinthians 3:5

**sufficient from ourselves (ULT)**  
**able to do...in our own strength (UST)**

Alternate translation: "qualified in ourselves" or "sufficient in ourselves"

**to consider anything as from ourselves (ULT)**  
**anything...so we cannot claim to be able to (UST)**

Here the word **anything** refers to anything pertaining to Paul's apostolic ministry. Alternate translation: "to claim that anything we have done in ministry comes from our own efforts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**our sufficiency {is} from God (ULT)**  
**it is God who gives us all we need to serve him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God gives us our sufficiency"

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- to be able to
- it is God who

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Not that we are sufficient from ourselves to consider anything **as** from ourselves. Instead, our sufficiency {is} from **God**,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> We are not able to do anything for God in our own strength, so we cannot claim **to be able to**. Instead, **it is God who** gives us all we need to serve him.



## **2 Corinthians 3:6**

**of a new covenant, not of {the} letter (ULT)  
new promise he has made to his people. This  
is not a message about obeying all the written  
laws of his old agreement that he made (UST)**

Here the word **letter** means letters of the alphabet and refers to words that people write down. Alternate translation: “a covenant not based on commands that men have written” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**not of {the} letter (ULT)  
This is not a message about obeying all the  
written laws of his old agreement that he  
made (UST)**

The phrase **the letter** alludes to the Old Testament law. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**but of the Spirit (ULT)  
the...with the Jewish people. Instead, it is a message about God giving us his  
Spirit (UST)**

The Holy **Spirit** is the one who establishes God’s covenant with people. Alternate translation: “but a covenant based on what the Spirit does” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the...letter kills (ULT)  
Previously, God condemned people to be separated from him forever if they  
did not obey his laws...Previously, God condemned people to be separated  
from him forever if they did not obey his laws (UST)**

Paul speaks of the Old Testament law as a person who **kills**. (See: [Personification](#))

**the...letter kills (ULT)  
Previously, God condemned people to be separated from him forever if they  
did not obey his laws...Previously, God condemned people to be separated  
from him forever if they did not obey his laws (UST)**

Following that law leads to spiritual death. Alternate translation: “the written law leads to death” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [as servants](#)
- [of a...covenant](#)
- [of {the} letter](#)
- [letter](#)
- [of the Spirit](#)

## ULT

<sup>6</sup> who indeed made us competent [as servants of a new covenant](#), not of {the} [letter](#) but of the [Spirit](#); for the [letter](#) kills, but the [Spirit](#) makes alive.

## UST

<sup>6</sup> He has enabled [us](#) to tell people the message about the new [promise he has made to his people](#). This is not a message about obeying all the written laws of his old agreement that he made with the Jewish people. Instead, it is a message about God giving us his [Spirit](#). Previously, God condemned people to be separated from him forever if they did not obey his laws. But by God’s new promise his [Spirit](#) enables people to live eternally.



- Spirit
- makes alive

## Translation Words - UST

- us
- promise he has made to his people
- This is...a message about obeying all the written laws of his old agreement that he made
- Previously, God condemned people to be separated from him forever if they did not obey his laws
- the...it is a message about God giving us his Spirit
- his Spirit
- enables people to live eternally



## **2 Corinthians 3:7**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul contrasts the fading glory of the old covenant with the superiority and freedom of the new covenant. He contrasts the veil of Moses with the clarity of present revelation. The time of Moses was a less clear picture of what is now revealed.

**Now if the ministry of {this} death...came in glory so that (ULT)  
God's law brings death, and...It came with the brilliant light that always shines where God is...so brightly that (UST)**

Paul emphasizes that although the law leads to **death**, it was still very glorious. (See: [Irony](#))

**the ministry of {this} death (ULT)  
God's law brings death, and (UST)**

Here, **the ministry of death** refers to the Old Testament law that God gave through Moses. Alternate translation: "the ministry that causes death because it is based on the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**engraved in letters on stones (ULT)  
God's law brings death, and...he wrote it on stone tablets, and he gave it to Moses (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that God carved into stone with letters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in...glory so that (ULT)  
God's law brings death, and...the brilliant light that always shines where God is...so brightly that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in so much glory that"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [ministry](#)
- [of...death](#)
- [glory](#)
- [glory](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [face](#)
- [of...face](#)
- [of Moses](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> Now if the [ministry](#) of {this} [death](#)—engraved in letters on stones—came in [glory](#) so that the [sons of Israel](#) were not able to look intently at the [face of Moses](#) because of the fading [glory](#) of his [face](#),

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> [God's law brings death](#), and he wrote it on stone tablets, and he gave it to Moses. It came with [the brilliant light that always shines where God is](#). And that [glory shined on Moses' face](#); his [face shined](#) so brightly that the [Israelites](#) could not look at his [face](#). That bright light slowly faded from his face.

## Translation Words - UST

- God's law brings death, and
- God's law brings death, and
- the brilliant light that always shines where God is
- glory shined
- Moses
- face; his face shined
- face
- Israelites
- Israelites

## 2 Corinthians 3:8

**how will the ministry of the Spirit not be with much more glory (ULT)**

**Certainly the ministry of the Spirit shines much more brightly (UST)**

Paul uses this question to emphasize that the **ministry of the Spirit** does must be more glorious than “the ministry of death” because it leads to life. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “So the service that the Spirit does must be even more glorious!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> how will the [ministry](#) of the [Spirit](#) not be with much more [glory](#)?

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Certainly the [ministry](#) of the [Spirit](#) [shines](#) much more [brightly](#)!

**the ministry of the Spirit (ULT)**

**the ministry of the Spirit (UST)**

Here, **the ministry of the Spirit** refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. Alternate translation: “the ministry that gives life because it is based on the Spirit” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ministry](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [glory](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ministry](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [shines...brightly](#)



## **2 Corinthians 3:9**



## the ministry of {this} condemnation (ULT) the law (UST)

Here, **the ministry of condemnation** refers to the Old Testament law. Alternate translation: “the ministry that condemns people because it is based on the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## the ministry of {this} righteousness abounds much more in glory (ULT) brilliant light of the law can only bring death to everyone. So how very much more does his brilliant light shine in us when God makes us right with himself (UST)

Here the phrase **much more** marks this phrase as an exclamation, not as a question. Alternate translation: “then the service of righteousness must abound in so much more glory” (See: [Exclamations](#))

## the ministry of {this} righteousness abounds much more in glory (ULT) brilliant light of the law can only bring death to everyone. So how very much more does his brilliant light shine in us when God makes us right with himself (UST)

Paul speaks of **the ministry of righteousness** as if it were an object that could produce or multiply another object. He means that this ministry is far more glorious than the law, which also had **glory**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the ministry of {this} righteousness (ULT) of the law can only bring death to everyone...does his brilliant light shine in us when God makes us right with himself (UST)

Here, **the ministry of righteousness** refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. Alternate translation: “the ministry that makes people righteous because it is based on the Spirit” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ministry
- ministry
- of...condemnation
- had} glory
- in glory
- of...righteousness
- abounds

### Translation Words - UST

- the law

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For if the **ministry** of {this} **condemnation** {had} **glory**, the **ministry** of {this} **righteousness** **abounds** much more **in glory**!

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Even **the law** **shined with God's brilliant light**. But that **brilliant light** of the law can only bring death to everyone. So how very much more **does his brilliant light shine in us when God makes us right with himself**!

- the law
- does his brilliant light shine in us when God
- shined with God's brilliant light
- light
- brilliant
- makes us right with himself

## 2 Corinthians 3:10

**For indeed, {what} had been glorified is not glorified...because of {its} surpassing glory (ULT)**

**When the brilliant light of the law is compared with God's work of putting us right with himself, it is as if the law is not wonderful...because what replaced...it is so much more wonderful (UST)**

The Old Testament law no longer appears **glorious** when compared with the new covenant, which is much more glorious.

**what} had been glorified (ULT)  
it is as if the law is...wonderful (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the law which God once made glorious" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in this part (ULT)  
at all, because what replaced (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in this way"

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...glorified
- had been glorified
- glory

### Translation Words - UST

- it is as if the law is...wonderful
- it is as if the law is...wonderful
- wonderful

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For indeed, {what} **had been glorified** is not **glorified** in this part, because of {its} surpassing **glory**.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> When the brilliant light of the law is compared with God's work of putting us right with himself, **it is as if the law is not wonderful** at all, because what replaced it is so much more **wonderful!**

## 2 Corinthians 3:11

### what} is fading away (ULT) the law, which is passing away (UST)

This refers to “the ministry of condemnation,” which Paul speaks of as if it were an object capable of disappearing. Alternate translation: “that which was becoming useless” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [glory](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [was wonderful](#)
- [wonderful; and it will last forever](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For if {what} is fading away {came} with [glory](#), much more {what} remains {will come} with [glory](#)!

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> So you can see that the law, which is passing away, [was wonderful](#), but you can also see that what is replacing it will be even more [wonderful; and it will last forever](#).

## 2 Corinthians 3:12

**Therefore, having such a hope (ULT)**  
**Since we apostles trust in God for the future (UST)**

The word **Therefore** refers to what Paul has just said. His **hope** comes from knowing that the new covenant has an eternal glory.

**such a hope (ULT)**  
**trust in God for the future (UST)**

Alternate translation: "such confidence"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a hope
- with...boldness

### Translation Words - UST

- trust in God for the future
- courage

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, having such a hope, we act with much boldness,

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Since we apostles trust in God for the future, we have great courage.

## 2 Corinthians 3:13

### the end of {what} was fading away (ULT) at the fading light from God (UST)

The refers to the glory that shined on Moses' face. Alternate translation: "the glory on Moses' face as it faded away completely" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- like
- Moses
- a veil
- face
- sons
- of Israel

#### Translation Words - UST

- like
- Moses
- a veil
- face
- children
- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> and not like Moses putting a veil over his face so that the sons of Israel would not look directly at the end of {what} was fading away.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> We are not like Moses, who put a veil over his face so the children of Israel would not have to look at the fading light from God.



## **2 Corinthians 3:14**



**But their minds were hardened (ULT)**  
**Long ago, the children of Israel refused to believe God’s message (UST)**

Paul speaks of the **minds** of the Israelite people as objects that could be closed or made hard. This expression means that they were unable to understand what they saw. Alternate translation: “But the Israelites could not understand what they saw” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for until the present day (ULT)**  
**Even today (UST)**

Here, **the present day** refers to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.

**the same veil remains at the reading of the old covenant (ULT)**  
**when the old law is read, it is as if they wear that same veil (UST)**

Just as the Israelites could not see the glory on Moses’ face because he covered his face with a **veil**, there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the **old covenant**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...at the reading of...old covenant (ULT)**  
**Even today...when...old law is read, it is as if (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when they hear someone read the old covenant”

**not being lifted, because in Christ is it fading away (ULT)**  
**they wear...Only when we are joined with the Messiah does God take the veil away (UST)**

Here, **it** refers to “the same veil.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one removes the veil, because only in Christ does God remove it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [minds](#)
- [were hardened](#)
- [day](#)
- [veil](#)
- [of...covenant](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [refused to believe God’s message](#)
- [refused to believe God’s message](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But their [minds were hardened](#), for until the present [day](#), the same [veil](#) remains at the reading of the old [covenant](#), not being lifted, because [in Christ](#) is it fading away.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Long ago, the children of Israel [refused to believe God’s message](#). [Even today](#), when the old [law](#) is read, it is as if they wear that same [veil](#). Only when [we are joined with the Messiah](#) does God take the veil away.

- Even today
- law
- veil
- we are joined with the Messiah
- the Messiah

## 2 Corinthians 3:15

**But until today (ULT)**

**Yes, even today (UST)**

Here the word **today** refers to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.

**whenever Moses is read (ULT)**

**whenever they read the law of Moses (UST)**

Here the word **Moses** refers to the Old Testament law that Moses wrote down. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**whenever Moses is read (ULT)**

**whenever they read the law of Moses (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whenever someone reads the Mosaic law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a veil lies over their heart (ULT)**

**it is as if they had a veil over their minds (UST)**

Here the word **heart** represents what people think. Alternate translation: “a veil prevents them from understanding” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a veil lies over their heart (ULT)**

**it is as if they had a veil over their minds (UST)**

Here the people being unable to understand the old covenant is spoken of as if they have **a veil** that covers **their heart** the way a physical veil would cover their eyes. Alternate translation: “they are unable to understand what they are hearing” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [today](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [a veil](#)
- [heart](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [today](#)
- [the law of Moses](#)
- [a veil](#)
- [minds](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But until [today](#), whenever [Moses](#) is read, [a veil](#) lies over their [heart](#),

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Yes, even [today](#), whenever they read [the law of Moses](#), it is as if they had [a veil](#) over their [minds](#).

## 2 Corinthians 3:16

**whenever...whenever...one might turn to the Lord (ULT)**

**But when a person...But when a person...turns to the Lord (UST)**

Here, **turn to** is a metaphor that means to become loyal to someone. Alternate translation: “when a person starts to worship the Lord” or “when a person starts to trust in the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the veil is taken away (ULT)**  
**God removes that veil (UST)**

God gives them the ability to understand. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God lifts the veil away” or “God gives them the ability to understand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [one might turn](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [veil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [turns](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [veil](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> but whenever [one might turn](#) to the [Lord](#), the [veil](#) is taken away.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> But when a person [turns](#) to the [Lord](#), God removes that [veil](#).

## 2 Corinthians 3:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- of the Lord {is
- Spirit
- Spirit
- there is} freedom

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- of the Lord
- Spirit
- Spirit
- people become free

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord {is}, {there is} freedom.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Now the word "Lord" here means "the Spirit." Where the Spirit of the Lord is, people become free.



## **2 Corinthians 3:18**

**Now we all (ULT)  
But for all of us who believe (UST)**

Here the word **we** refers to all believers, including Paul and the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**with unveiled face reflecting the glory of the Lord (ULT)  
it is as though we look at him with no veil over our faces...to reflect his brilliant light... the Lord (UST)**

Unlike the Israelites who could not see God's glory reflected on Moses' face because he had covered it with a veil, there is nothing to prevent believers from seeing and understanding God's **glory**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**are being transformed into the same image (ULT)  
and we are being changed...This is what (UST)**

The Spirit is changing believers to be glorious like Jesus. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Lord is transforming us into his same glorious likeness" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**glory...from glory to (ULT)  
and we are being changed...his brilliant light...more and more (UST)**

This means that the Spirit is constantly increasing the **glory** of believers. Alternate translation: "from one amount of glory to another amount of glory"

**of the Lord...from...just as (ULT)  
and we are being changed...the Lord does (UST)**

Alternate translation: "just as this comes from the Lord"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [with...face](#)
- [glory](#)
- [glory](#)
- [glory \(2\)](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [the Lord \(2\)](#)
- [image](#)
- [just as](#)
- [the Spirit](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> Now we all, with unveiled [face](#) reflecting the [glory of the Lord](#), are being transformed into the same [image](#) from [glory](#) to [glory](#), just as from the [Lord](#), the [Spirit](#).

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> But for all of us who believe, it is as though we look at him with no veil [over our faces](#), and we are being changed to reflect [his brilliant light more and more](#). This is [what the Lord does](#); and he is the [Spirit](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- over our faces
- his brilliant light
- more and more
- more and more (2)
- is what
- the Lord
- and he is (2)
- does
- the Spirit

## 2 Corinthians 4

### 2 Corinthians 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins with the word “therefore.” This connects it to what the previous chapter teaches. How these chapters are divided may be confusing to the reader.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Ministry

Paul ministers to people by telling them about Christ. He does not try to trick people into believing. If they do not understand the gospel, it is because the problem is ultimately spiritual. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

##### Life and death

Paul does not refer here to physical life and death. Life represents the new life a Christian has in Jesus. Death represents the old way of living before believing in Jesus. (See: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#) and [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#) and [faith](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Hope

Paul uses a repeated pattern in a purposeful way. He makes a statement. Then he denies a seemingly opposite or contradictory statement or gives an exception. Together these give the reader hope in difficult circumstances. (See: [hope](#), [hoped](#))

## 2 Corinthians 4:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul writes that he is honest in his ministry by preaching Christ, not praising himself. He shows the death and the life of Jesus in how he lives so that life can work in the Corinthian believers.

**we received mercy, we do not become discouraged (ULT)**  
**he...had mercy on us. So we are not downhearted (UST)**

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, having this **ministry, just as we received mercy**, we do not become discouraged.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> **God gave us** this **responsibility to carry out**, and **he also had mercy on us**. So we are not downhearted.

Both occurrences of the word **we** refers to Paul and his coworker, but not to the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**just as we received mercy (ULT)**  
**and he also had mercy on us (UST)**

This phrase explains how Paul and his coworkers have “this ministry.” It is a gift that God has given to them through his **mercy**. Alternate translation: “because God has shown us mercy” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ministry](#)
- [just as](#)
- [we received mercy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God gave us...responsibility to carry out](#)
- [he...had mercy on us](#)
- [and...also](#)



## **2 Corinthians 4:2**

**we have rejected the shameful hidden things (ULT)**  
**anything we would be ashamed of doing, and we have nothing to hide from anyone (UST)**

This means that Paul and his coworkers refused to do secret and **shameful** things. It does not mean that they had done these things in the past.

**the shameful hidden things (ULT)**  
**anything we would be ashamed of doing, and we have nothing to hide from anyone (UST)**

The word **hidden** describes the things that people do secretly. Things that are **shameful** should cause people who do them to feel ashamed. Alternate translation: “the things that people do secretly because they cause shame” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**walking in craftiness (ULT)**  
**We are careful...to do...we do not twist...message to make it say what we want...In this way (UST)**

Alternate translation: “living by deception”

**nor distorting the word of God (ULT)**  
**we do not twist...God’s...message to make it say what we want (UST)**

Here, **word of God** is a metonym for the message from God. Alternate translation: “we do not mishandle God’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**nor distorting the word of God (ULT)**  
**we do not twist...God’s...message to make it say what we want (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **nor distorting**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: “we use the word of God correctly” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**commending ourselves to every man’s conscience (ULT)**  
**we present ourselves for you to judge us as we stand (UST)**

This means that they provide enough evidence for each person who hears them to decide whether they are right or wrong.

## ULT

<sup>2</sup> Instead, we have rejected the **shameful** hidden things, not **walking** in craftiness, nor distorting the **word of God**, but by the **manifestation** of the **truth**, commending ourselves to every man’s **conscience** before **God**.

## UST

<sup>2</sup> We are careful not to do anything we would be ashamed of doing, and we have nothing to hide from anyone. We do not promise something that God will not give, and we do not twist God’s message to make it say what we want. We proclaim only the truth. In this way, we present ourselves for you to judge us as we stand before God.

**before God (ULT)****before God (UST)**

Here, **before God** refers to God's presence. God's understanding and approval of Paul's truthfulness is referred to as God being able to see them. Alternate translation: "with God as witness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- shameful
- walking
- word of God
- by...manifestation
- of...truth
- conscience
- God (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- We are careful...to do
- anything we would be ashamed of doing, and we have nothing to hide from anyone
- we do not twist...God's...message to make it say what we want
- We proclaim only
- truth
- as we stand
- God (2)

## 2 Corinthians 4:3

**But even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to the ones perishing (ULT)**

**If the good news which we preach is hidden with a veil, it is hidden only from those who refuse to believe and are dying apart from God (UST)**

This refers back to what Paul said starting in [2 Corinthians 3:14](#). There Paul explained that there is a spiritual **veil** that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant. In the same way, people are not able to understand the **gospel**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But even if our [gospel](#) is veiled, it is veiled to the ones [perishing](#),

### UST

<sup>3</sup> If the [good news](#) which we preach is hidden with a veil, it is hidden only from those who [refuse to believe and are dying apart from God](#).

**if...our gospel is veiled...it is veiled (ULT)**

**If...the good news which we preach is hidden with a veil...it is hidden only (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if a veil covers our gospel, that veil covers it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**our gospel (ULT)**

**the good news which we preach (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the gospel that we preach"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [gospel](#)
- [perishing](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [good news](#)
- [refuse to believe and are dying apart from God](#)





## **2 Corinthians 4:4**

**the god of this age has blinded the minds of the unbelievers (ULT)**  
**the god of this world has made them blind to the truth (UST)**

Paul speaks of the **minds** of unbelievers as if they had eyes, and their inability to understand as their minds being unable to see. Alternate translation: “the god of this world has prevented unbelievers from understanding” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the god of this age (ULT)**  
**the god of this world (UST)**

This phrase refers to Satan. Alternate translation: “the god who rules this world”

**the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ...does not appear {to them (ULT)**  
**they do not trust...the good news about the wonderful honor of the Messiah (UST)**

As the Israelites could not see God’s **glory** that shined on Moses’ face because he covered it with a veil ([2 Corinthians 3:13](#)), unbelievers are not able to see Christ’s glory that shines in **the gospel**. This means that they are unable to understand “the gospel of the glory of Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of...age...the light of...gospel (ULT)**  
**of...they do not trust...good news (UST)**

Alternate translation: “the light that comes from the gospel”

**the gospel of the glory of Christ**

Alternate translation: “the gospel about the Christ’s glory”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [god](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of...age](#)
- [minds](#)
- [of...unbelievers](#)
- [light](#)
- [of...gospel](#)
- [of...glory](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [the image](#)

## ULT

<sup>4</sup> to whom the [god](#) of this [age](#) has blinded the [minds](#) of the [unbelievers](#), so that the [light](#) of the [gospel](#) of the [glory of Christ](#), who is the [image of God](#), does not appear {to them}.

## UST

<sup>4</sup> For them, the [god](#) of this [world](#) has [made them blind to the truth](#) because [they do not trust](#) the [good news](#) about the [wonderful honor](#) of the [Messiah](#)—for it is the [Messiah](#) who [shows us what God is like](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- god
- God
- world
- has made them blind to the truth
- has made them blind to the truth
- they do not trust
- good news
- wonderful honor
- Messiah
- shows us what...is like

## 2 Corinthians 4:5

**but {the} Lord Christ Jesus, and ourselves {as} your servants (ULT)**

**Instead, we proclaim the Messiah Jesus as our Master, and we are your servants (UST)**

You can supply the missing verb for these phrases. Alternate translation: "but we proclaim Christ Jesus as Lord, and we proclaim ourselves as your servants" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Jesus...for...sake (ULT)**

**Jesus...because (UST)**

Alternate translation: "because of Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we do...proclaim](#)
- [the} Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [as...servants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We do...proclaim...to you](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [we are joined to Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [as...Master](#)
- [we are...servants](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For [we do](#) not [proclaim](#) ourselves, but [{the} Lord Christ Jesus](#), and ourselves [{as}](#) your [servants](#) for [Jesus'](#) sake.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [We do](#) not [proclaim](#) ourselves [to you](#) as people who can rescue you from any evil. Instead, we proclaim [the Messiah Jesus](#) as our [Master](#), and [we are](#) your [servants](#) because [we are joined to Jesus](#).



## **2 Corinthians 4:6**

**From darkness a light will shine (ULT)  
Light will shine out of the darkness (UST)**

With this sentence, Paul refers to God creating **light**, as described in the book of Genesis.

**who shined...for {the} illumination of the  
knowledge of the glory of God (ULT)  
It is as if he has shone his light into our  
hearts, so that...It is as if he...shone his light  
into our hearts, so that...we can learn how  
wonderful God is (UST)**

Here, the illumination from the light represents the ability to understand. Just as God created light, he also creates understanding for believers. Alternate translation: "the one who caused light to shine ... to enable us to understand the glory of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in our hearts (ULT)  
It is as if he...shone his light into our hearts, so that (UST)**

Here the word **hearts** refers to the mind and thoughts. Alternate translation: "in our minds" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the light of the knowledge of the glory of God**

Alternate translation: "to show us the knowledge of the glory of God"

**of the glory of God in {the} face of Jesus Christ (ULT)  
when we trust in Jesus the Messiah...how wonderful God is (UST)**

Just as God's **glory** shone upon Moses' face ([2 Corinthians 3:7](#)), it also shines upon **the face of Jesus**. This means that when Paul preaches the gospel, people are able to see and understand the message about God's glory. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- of God
- darkness
- Christ
- a light
- the} illumination
- hearts
- of...knowledge
- of...glory
- the} face
- of Jesus

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> For [God](#) {is} the one who said, "From [darkness a light](#) will shine," who shined in our [hearts](#) for {the} [illumination](#) of the [knowledge](#) of the [glory of God](#) in {the} [face of Jesus Christ](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> For [God](#) is the one who said, "[Light](#) will shine out of [the darkness](#)." [It is as if he](#) has [shone his light into our hearts](#), so that [when we trust in Jesus the Messiah](#), [we can learn how wonderful God is](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- God
- God is
- Light
- It is as if he...shone his light into our hearts, so that
- we can learn
- how wonderful
- the darkness
- It is as if he...shone his light into our hearts, so that
- when we trust in
- Jesus
- the Messiah

## 2 Corinthians 4:7

### But we have (ULT)

### Now we carry (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Paul and his coworkers, but not to the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### we have...this treasure in clay jars (ULT) we carry...these precious gifts from God in... which are fragile like clay pots (UST)

Paul speaks of the gospel as if it were a\* *treasure*\* and their bodies as if they were breakable **jars** made out of **clay**. This emphasizes that they are of little value compared to the worth of the gospel that they preach. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clay](#)
- [of...power](#)
- [from God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [which are fragile like clay](#)
- [strength](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But we have this treasure in [clay](#) jars, so that the surpassing greatness of the [power](#) might be [from God](#) and not from us;

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Now we carry these precious gifts from God in our bodies, [which are fragile like clay](#) pots. There can be no mistake about where our [strength](#) comes from: It comes only from [God](#).

## 2 Corinthians 4:8

**in every {side} being pressed in (ULT)  
We have suffered many different kinds of  
trouble (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People afflict us in every way" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being pressed in](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [trouble](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> in every {side} [being pressed in](#), but not being crushed; being perplexed, but not despairing;

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> We have suffered many different kinds of [trouble](#), but they have not destroyed us. We may be confused about what we should do, but we never give up.

## 2 Corinthians 4:9

**being persecuted, but not being forsaken (ULT)**

**Some people try to harm us, but we are never alone (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people persecute us but God does not forsake us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**being thrown down, but not perishing (ULT)**  
**it is as if some people knocked us down, but we always get up again (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people strike us down but do not destroy us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being persecuted](#)
- [being forsaken](#)
- [perishing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Some people try to harm us](#)
- [we are...alone](#)
- [we always get up again](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [being persecuted](#), but not [being forsaken](#); being thrown down, but not [perishing](#);

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Some people try to harm us](#), but [we are never alone](#); it is as if some people knocked us down, but [we always get up again](#).

## 2 Corinthians 4:10

**always carrying around in the body the dying of Jesus (ULT)**

**We are often in danger of dying, as Jesus died (UST)**

Paul speaks of his sufferings as if they are an experience of **the death of Jesus**. Alternate translation: “we are often in danger of dying, as Jesus died” or “we always suffer in such a way that we experience the death of Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the life of Jesus also might be revealed in our body (ULT)**

**but...our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive (UST)**

This could mean: (1) our bodies will live again, because **Jesus** is alive. (2) the spiritual **life** that **Jesus** gives also may be shown in our bodies.

**the life of Jesus also might be revealed in our body (ULT)**

**but...our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “other people may also see the life of Jesus in our bodies” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [body \(2\)](#)
- [dying](#)
- [of Jesus](#)
- [of Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [life](#)
- [might be revealed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We are...in danger of dying](#)
- [bodies \(2\)](#)
- [as Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [died](#)
- [will live again](#)
- [is alive](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> always carrying around in the [body](#) the [dying of Jesus](#) so that the [life of Jesus](#) also [might be revealed](#) in our [body](#);

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [We are](#) often [in danger of dying](#), as [Jesus died](#), but our [bodies will live again](#), because [Jesus is alive](#).



## **2 Corinthians 4:11**

**for we who are alive are always being handed over to death for the sake of Jesus (ULT)  
So, although we are still alive, we always realize that that people some day may kill us because we teach about...God allows us to suffer...Jesus (UST)**

Here, **being handed over to death** represents being in danger of dying because of being loyal to Jesus. Alternate translation: “for those of us who are alive, God is always leading us to face death because we are joined to Jesus” or “for people are always causing us who are alive to be in danger of dying because we are joined to Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> for we [who are alive](#) are always being handed over to [death](#) for the sake of [Jesus](#) so that also the [life of Jesus might be revealed](#) in our mortal [flesh](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> So, although we [are still alive](#), we always [realize that that people some day may kill us](#) because we teach about [Jesus](#). God allows us to suffer in order that [people will see that Jesus is alive](#) and that he is strengthening our [bodies](#) that are some day going to die.

**so that also the life of Jesus might be revealed in our mortal flesh (ULT)  
Jesus...in order that people will see that...is alive and that he is strengthening our bodies that are some day going to die (UST)**

God wants Jesus' **life** to **be shown** in us. This could mean: (1) our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive. (2) the spiritual life that Jesus gives also may be shown in our bodies. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Corinthians 4:10](#).

**so that also the life of Jesus might be revealed in our mortal flesh (ULT)  
Jesus...in order that people will see that...is alive and that he is strengthening our bodies that are some day going to die (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Corinthians 4:10](#). Alternate translation: “so other people may see the life of Jesus in our body” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [who are alive](#)
- [life](#)
- [death](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [of Jesus](#)
- [might be revealed](#)
- [flesh](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [are still alive](#)
- [that...is alive](#)
- [we...realize that...people some day may kill us](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [people will see](#)



- bodies

## 2 Corinthians 4:12

**death works in us, but life in you (ULT)  
that although we apostles are constantly  
suffering and may soon die, the result of that  
is that all of you have now received eternal  
life (UST)**

Paul speaks of **death** and **life** as if they are persons who can **work**. This means that they are always in danger of physical death so that the Corinthians can have spiritual life. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [life](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that although we apostles are constantly suffering and may soon die](#)
- [have now received eternal life](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So then, [death](#) works in us, but [life](#) in you.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So you can see [that although we apostles are constantly suffering and may soon die](#), the result of that is that all of you [have now received eternal life](#).

## 2 Corinthians 4:13

**the same spirit of the faith (ULT)**  
**We are not discouraged...We are like the person who wrote in (UST)**

Here the word **spirit** refers a person's attitude and temperament.  
 Alternate translation: "the same attitude of faith"

**according to {what} has been written (ULT)**  
**We are like the person who wrote in...the scriptures (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "as the one who wrote these words" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I believed; therefore I spoke (ULT)**  
**I trust in God; this is why I speak (UST)**

This is a quote from the Psalms.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#)
- [of...faith](#)
- [has been written](#)
- [I believed](#)
- [believe](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We are like the person who wrote in](#)
- [We are like the person who wrote in](#)
- [the scriptures](#)
- [I trust in God](#)
- [trust in God](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But having the same [spirit](#) of the [faith](#) according to {what} [has been written](#): "I [believed](#); therefore I spoke," we also [believe](#); therefore we also speak,

### UST

<sup>13</sup> We are not discouraged. [We are like the person who wrote in the scriptures](#): "I [trust in God](#); this is why I speak." We also [trust in God](#), and we also speak about what he has done for us.

## 2 Corinthians 4:14

**the one who raised Jesus...also...will...raise (ULT)**

**who raised up the Lord Jesus from the dead...also...will...raise...up from the dead (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "the one who caused the Lord Jesus to live again will also raise" or "God, who raised the Lord Jesus, will also raise" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [knowing](#)
- [who raised](#)
- [will...raise](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We know](#)
- [raised up...from the dead](#)
- [will...raise...up from the dead](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [knowing](#) that the one [who raised Jesus](#) will also [raise](#) us with [Jesus](#) and present us with you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [We know](#) that God, who [raised up the Lord Jesus from the dead](#), will also [raise us up from the dead](#) with him, and that [Jesus](#) will take us along with you, and take us to be where God is.

## 2 Corinthians 4:15

**For all these things {are} for your sake (ULT)  
All that I have suffered is to help you (UST)**

Here, **all these things** refers to all of the sufferings that Paul has described in previous verses.

**the grace, having increased through more and more {people (ULT)  
more and more people can know how God loves them freely, and (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “as God spreads his grace to many more people, it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**may cause thanksgiving to abound (ULT)  
they may...more and more (UST)**

Paul speaks of **thanksgiving** as if it were an object that could become larger by itself. Alternate translation: “more and more people may give thanks” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [may cause...to abound](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [how God loves them freely](#)
- [they may...more and more](#)
- [praise](#)
- [him](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For all these things {are} for your sake, so that the [grace](#), having increased through more and more {people}, [may cause](#) thanksgiving to [abound](#) to the [glory of God](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> All that I have suffered is to help you, so that more and more people can know [how God loves them freely](#), and so that [they may praise him more and more](#).

## 2 Corinthians 4:16

### Connecting Statement:

Paul writes that the Corinthian difficulties are minor and do not last long when compared to the unseen eternal things.

### So we do not become discouraged (ULT)

### We are not discouraged (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... discouraged**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "So we remain confident" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### our outer man is decaying (ULT)

### When...our bodies are dying a little each day...outwardly (UST)

This refers to their physical bodies decaying and dying. Alternate translation: "our physical bodies are getting weak and dying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

This refers to their inward, spiritual lives getting stronger. Alternate translation: "our spiritual beings are being strengthened day by day" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### inwardly we are being renewed day by day

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God is renewing our inward being more each day" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is decaying](#)
- [day](#)
- [day \(2\)](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are dying a little each day](#)
- [every day](#)
- [every day \(2\)](#)

### ULT

**16** So we do not become discouraged. Rather, even if our outer man [is decaying](#), yet our inner {man} is being renewed [day](#) {by} [day](#).

### UST

**16** We are not discouraged. When our bodies [are dying a little each day](#) outwardly, God is making us new [every day](#) on the inside.

## 2 Corinthians 4:17

**For our momentary, light affliction...is producing in us an eternal weight of glory (ULT)**

**For these short, easy times of suffering...us... are getting...ready for the day when God will make us wonderful forever (UST)**

Paul speaks of his sufferings and the **glory** that God will give him as if they were objects that can be weighed. The glory far outweighs the suffering. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**far beyond all comparison (ULT)**

**wonderful in ways that no one can measure or explain (UST)**

The glory that Paul will experience is so heavy that no one can measure it. Alternate translation: "that cannot be measured" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**far beyond all comparison (ULT)**

**wonderful in ways that no one can measure or explain (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that no one can measure" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [affliction](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [of glory](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [times of suffering](#)
- [wonderful](#)
- [forever](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For our momentary, light [affliction](#) is producing in us an [eternal](#) weight of [glory](#) far beyond all comparison.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> For these short, easy [times of suffering](#) are getting us ready for the day when God will make us [wonderful forever](#), wonderful in ways that no one can measure or explain.

## 2 Corinthians 4:18

**the things that are seen, but the things that are not seen (ULT)**  
**things that we can see, but for the things we cannot see (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “things that we can see, but not the things that we cannot see” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but the things that are not seen (ULT)**  
**but for the things we cannot see (UST)**

You can supply the verb for this phrase. Alternate translation: “but we are watching for things that are unseen” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [are} eternal](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they last forever](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> We are not watching the things that are seen, but the things that are not seen. For the things that are seen {are} temporary, but the things that are not seen {are} [eternal](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> For we are not waiting for things that we can see, but for the things we cannot see. The things that we can now see are temporary, but the things we cannot see, [they last forever](#).



## 2 Corinthians 5

### 2 Corinthians 5 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### New bodies in heaven

Paul knows that when he dies he will receive a much better body. Because of this, he is not afraid of being killed for preaching the gospel. So he tells others that they too can be reconciled to God. Christ will take away their sin and give them his righteousness. (See: [good news, gospel, reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#) and [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#))

##### New creation

The old and new creation probably refers to how Paul illustrates the old and new self. These concepts are also the same as the old and new man. The term “old” probably does not refer to the sinful nature with which a person is born. It refers to the old way of living or the Christian formerly being bound to sin. The “new creation” is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ. (See: [faith](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Home

The Christian's home is no longer in the world. A Christian's real home is in heaven. By using this metaphor, Paul emphasizes that the Christian's circumstances in this world are temporary. It gives hope to those who are suffering. (See: [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [hope, hoped](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “The message of reconciliation”

This refers to the gospel. Paul calls for people who are hostile to God to repent and be reconciled to him. (See: [repent, repentance](#) and [reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation](#))



## **2 Corinthians 5:1**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul contrasts believers' earthly bodies to the heavenly ones God will give.

**if our earthly house of {this} tent would be torn down, we have a building from God (ULT)  
these bodies are only like temporary dwelling places, like tents that do not last very long...  
God gives us a permanent place (UST)**

Here a temporary **earthly dwelling** is a metaphor for a person's physical body. Here a permanent "building from God" is a metaphor for the new body that God will give believers after they die. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**if our earthly house of {this} tent would be torn down (ULT)  
these bodies are only like temporary dwelling places, like tents that do not last very long (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if people destroy the earthly dwelling that we live in" or "if people kill our bodies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**an eternal house in the heavens, not made with hands (ULT)  
But we know that when we die...in which we will live, a body that lasts forever, a body that God has made (UST)**

Here, **house** means the same thing as "building from God." Here, **hands** is a synecdoche that represents the human as a whole. Alternate translation: "It is a house in heaven, not made by humans" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**an eternal house in the heavens, not made with hands (ULT)  
But we know that when we die...in which we will live, a body that lasts forever, a body that God has made (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "It is a house in heaven that humans did not make" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [we know](#)
- [earthly](#)
- [house](#)
- [an...house](#)
- [of...tent](#)
- [God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> For [we know](#) that if our [earthly house](#) of {this} [tent](#) would be torn down, we have a building from [God](#), an [eternal house](#) in the [heavens](#), not made with hands.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> [We know](#) that [these bodies are only like temporary dwelling places, like tents](#) that do not last very long. But we know that when we die, [God](#) gives us a permanent place [in which we will live, a body that lasts forever](#), a body that God has made.

- eternal
- heavens

## Translation Words - UST

- We know
- these bodies
- are only like temporary dwelling places
- in which we will live
- like tents
- God
- a body that lasts forever
- a body that lasts forever

## 2 Corinthians 5:2

### in this {house} we groan (ULT)

**While we live in...physical bodies we suffer, We often groan (UST)**

Here, **this** means the same thing as “the earthly dwelling that we live in.” The word **groan** is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good.

### longing to be fully clothed with our dwelling that {is} from heaven (ULT)

**While we live in...our...physical bodies we suffer, We often groan...with longing for the bodies we will have when we will live with God (UST)**

The words **our dwelling that is from heaven** means the same thing as “a building from God.” Paul speaks of the new body that believers receive after they die as if it were both a building and a piece of clothing that a person can put on. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- we groan
- to be fully clothed
- heaven

### Translation Words - UST

- While we live in...physical bodies we suffer, We often groan
- for the bodies we will have
- when we will live with God

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For indeed, in this {house} we groan, longing to be fully clothed with our dwelling that {is} from heaven,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> While we live in our physical bodies we suffer, We often groan with longing for the bodies we will have when we will live with God—

## 2 Corinthians 5:3

**having clothed ourselves (ULT)  
when God clothes us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "by putting on our heavenly dwelling"

**we will not be found naked (ULT)  
in our new bodies, that will be our covering,  
like clothing (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "we will not be naked" or "God will not find us naked" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having clothed ourselves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [when God clothes us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and if indeed [having clothed ourselves](#), we will not be found naked.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> because [when God clothes us](#) in our new bodies, that will be our covering, like clothing.





## **2 Corinthians 5:4**

**the ones being in {this} tent (ULT)  
while we are still living in these bodies that do  
not last forever (UST)**

Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a **tent**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we...in {this} tent, groan (ULT)  
in these bodies that do not last forever, we  
often groan because...desire to be free from  
them (UST)**

The word **tent** refers to “the earthly dwelling that we live in.” The word **groan** is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good. See how you translated this in [2 Corinthians 5:2](#).

**being burdened (ULT)  
we often groan because...desire to be free  
from them (UST)**

Paul refers to the difficulties that the physical body experiences as if they were heavy objects that are difficult to carry. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we do not want to be unclothed...to be fully clothed (ULT)  
We are...not...longing to be without a body...we desire to receive our new  
bodies in heaven (UST)**

Paul speaks of the body as if it were clothing for our spirit. Here, **to be unclothed** refers to the death of the physical body; “to be clothed” refers to having the resurrection body that God will give. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to be unclothed (ULT)  
We are...longing to be without a body (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to be without clothes” or “to be naked”

**so that the mortal may be swallowed up by the life (ULT)  
We long for this to happen so that...that are going to die some day will  
suddenly be changed into bodies that will live forever (UST)**

Paul speaks of **life** as if it were an animal that eats **the mortal**. The physical body that will die will be replaced by a resurrection body that will live forever. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For indeed, we, the ones being in {this} **tent**, **groan**, **being burdened** because of it, we do not want **to be unclothed**, but **to be fully clothed**, so that the mortal may be swallowed up by the **life**.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> It is true that while we are still living in **these bodies that do not last forever**, **we often groan because we desire to be free from them**. **We are not longing to be without a body**. Instead, we groan because **we desire to receive our new bodies in heaven**. We long for this to happen so that these bodies that are going to die some day will suddenly be changed into bodies that will **live forever**.

**so that the mortal may be swallowed up by the life (ULT)**  
**We long for this to happen so that...that are going to die some day will suddenly be changed into bodies that will live forever (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that life may swallow up what is mortal" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- tent
- we...groan
- being burdened
- to be unclothed
- to be fully clothed
- life

### Translation Words - UST

- these bodies that do not last forever
- we often groan because...desire to be free from them
- we often groan because...desire to be free from them
- We are...longing to be without a body
- we desire to receive our new bodies in heaven
- live forever

## 2 Corinthians 5:5

**the one giving us the down payment of the Spirit (ULT)**

**he guarantees...by giving us his Spirit (UST)**

The **Spirit** is spoken of as if he were a partial **down payment** toward eternal life. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Corinthians 1:22](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- is} God
- down payment
- of...Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- he guarantees
- his Spirit

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now the one who prepared us for this very thing {is} God, the one giving us the **down payment** of the **Spirit**.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> God himself prepares our new bodies for us, and **he guarantees** that we will receive them by giving us **his Spirit**.

## 2 Corinthians 5:6

### Connecting Statement:

Because believers will have a new body and have the Holy Spirit as a pledge, Paul reminds them to live by faith that they may please the Lord. He continues by reminding them to persuade others because: (1) believers will appear at the judgment seat of Christ. (2) Christ who died for believers in love.

### being at home in the body (ULT) as long as we live in our bodies here on earth (UST)

Paul speaks of the physical **body** as if it were a place where a person dwells. Alternate translation: “while we are living in this earthly body” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### we are away from the Lord (ULT) we are not yet living together with the Lord Jesus in heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: “we are not at home with the Lord” or “we are not in heaven with the Lord”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [being courageous](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [body](#)
- [Lord](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So, because God’s Spirit lives in us, we are always confident that God will give us new bodies](#)
- [We know](#)
- [our bodies here on earth](#)
- [Lord Jesus in heaven](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, always [being courageous](#) and [knowing](#) that being at home in the [body](#), we are away from the [Lord](#)—

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So, because God’s Spirit lives in us, we are always confident that God will give us new bodies. We know that as long as we live in [our bodies here on earth](#), we are not yet living together with the [Lord Jesus in heaven](#).

## 2 Corinthians 5:7

**by faith...we walk...not by sight (ULT)  
by trusting in him...we live our lives...not by  
trusting in what we can see (UST)**

Here, **walk** is a metaphor for “live” or “behave.” Alternate translation: “we live according to faith, not according to what we see” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we walk](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we live our lives](#)
- [trusting in him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> for [we walk](#) by [faith](#), not by sight.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> ([we live our lives](#) by [trusting in him](#), and not by trusting in what we can see).

## 2 Corinthians 5:8

**think it good rather to be away from the body (ULT)**

**we would much rather...leave these present bodies in which (UST)**

Here the word **body** refers to the physical body.

**to be at home with the Lord (ULT)**  
**be with the Lord Jesus at our home in heaven (UST)**

Alternate translation: "at home with the Lord in heaven"

### Translation Words - ULT

- we are confident
- body
- Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- we have put our trust in him
- present bodies in which
- Lord Jesus

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now [we are confident](#) and think it good rather to be away from the [body](#) and to be at home with the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Because [we have put our trust in him](#), we would much rather leave these [present bodies in which](#) we are now living so we could be with the [Lord Jesus](#) at our home in heaven.

## 2 Corinthians 5:9

**whether being at home or being away (ULT)**  
**whether we are here or in heaven (UST)**

The phrases “with the Lord” and “from the Lord” may be supplied from the previous verses. Alternate translation: “whether we are at home with the Lord or away from the Lord” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**to be well-pleasing to him (ULT)**  
**to obey him (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to please the Lord”

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And therefore we aspire, whether being at home or being away, to be well-pleasing to him.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Therefore we make it our goal to obey him, whether we are here or in heaven.



## 2 Corinthians 5:10

### before the judgment seat of Christ

Alternate translation: "before Christ to be judged"

### each one may receive back (ULT) The Messiah will give us (UST)

Alternate translation: "each person may receive what he deserves for"

### the things {done} through the body (ULT) in this life...what we deserve, and (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the things he has done in the physical body" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### whether for good or for bad

Alternate translation: "whether those things were good or bad"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to be revealed
- of Christ
- may receive back
- body
- good
- bad

### Translation Words - UST

- will...stand
- Messiah
- life
- The Messiah will give us
- good
- bad

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For it is necessary for us all to be revealed before the judgment seat of Christ so that each one may receive back the things {done} through the body, with regard to what {things} he did, whether good or bad.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> For we will all stand before the Messiah when he sits as the judge of all. He will judge what we did when we were in this life. The Messiah will give us what we deserve, and he will judge what was good or bad.

## 2 Corinthians 5:11

**knowing...the fear of the Lord (ULT)**  
**we know...what it is to honor the Lord (UST)**

Alternate translation: "knowing what it means to fear the Lord"

**we persuade men (ULT)**  
**so we make sure to tell people (UST)**

This could mean: (1) **we persuade** people of the truth of the gospel.  
 (2) **we persuade** people that we are legitimate apostles. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**by God...we are clearly known (ULT)**  
**what kind of God he is...God knows what kind of people we are (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God clearly sees what kind of people we are" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**also to be clearly known in your consciences (ULT)**  
**you also understand whether we are doing good or evil (UST)**

Alternate translation: "that you are also convinced of it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- knowing
- fear
- of...Lord
- we are clearly known
- to be clearly known
- by God
- I hope
- consciences

### Translation Words - UST

- we know
- what it is to honor
- Lord
- what kind of God he is
- God knows what kind of people we are
- understand
- I expect
- whether we are doing good or evil

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, [knowing](#) the [fear](#) of the [Lord](#), we persuade men. But [we are clearly known by God](#), and [I hope](#) also to be clearly known in your [consciences](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Therefore [we know what it is to honor](#) the [Lord](#), so we make sure to tell people [what kind of God he is](#). [God knows what kind of people we are](#), and [I expect](#) that you also [understand whether we are doing good or evil](#).

## 2 Corinthians 5:12

**so that you may have {an answer (ULT)  
We do this, so that you can answer (UST)}**

Alternate translation: "so you may have something to say to"

**those who boast in appearance and not in  
heart (ULT)**

**those...who praise their own actions, but do  
not care about what they really are in their  
inner being (UST)**

Here the word **face** refers to outward expressions of things like ability and status. The word **heart** refers to the inward character of a person. Alternate translation: "those who praise their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in their inner being" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of boasting](#)
- [who boast](#)
- [heart](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to be proud](#)
- [who praise](#)
- [their inner being](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> We are not again commending ourselves to you but are giving you an opportunity [of boasting](#) on our behalf, so that you may have {an answer} for those [who boast](#) in appearance and not in [heart](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> We are not trying to prove again that we are genuine servants of God. We only want you to know what kind of people we are, and to give you a reason [to be proud](#) of us. We do this, so that you can answer those [who praise](#) their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in [their inner being](#).

## 2 Corinthians 5:13

**if...we are out of our mind...if we are of sound mind (ULT)**

**There are some people who think...we are crazy. That is okay...But on the other hand, if you think that I speak and act seriously, that is good also (UST)**

Paul is speaking about the way others think of him and his coworkers. Alternate translation: "if people think we are crazy ... if people think we are sane" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it is} for God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I simply want to please God](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For if we are out of our mind, [{it is} for God](#); if we are of sound mind, [{it is}](#) for you.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> There are some people who think we are crazy. That is okay. [I simply want to please God](#). But on the other hand, if you think that I speak and act seriously, that is good also. I want you to know that I do that in order to help you.

## 2 Corinthians 5:14

### For the love of Christ (ULT) Our love for the Messiah (UST)

This could refer to: (1) our **love** for **Christ**. (2) Christ's **love** for us.

### died for the sake of all (ULT) died for all (UST)

Alternate translation: "died for all people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- love
- of Christ
- having judged
- died
- died

### Translation Words - UST

- love
- Messiah
- We are sure
- died
- we all have died with him

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For the **love of Christ** controls us, **having judged** this: that one **died** for the sake of all; therefore, all **died**.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Our **love** for the **Messiah** drives us on. **We are sure** of this: the Messiah **died** for all, therefore **we all have died with him**.

## 2 Corinthians 5:15

**And...for...for the one who died...them...was raised (ULT)**

**for...for the Messiah, who died...their sins... God raised from the dead (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for him who for their sake died and whom God caused to live again" or "for Christ, who died for their sake and whom God raised"

**And...for...for the one who died...them...was raised (ULT)**

**for...for the Messiah, who died...their sins... God raised from the dead (UST)**

Here, **for the one** could refer: (1) only to **who died**. (2) to both **who died** and **was raised**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- he died
- who died
- who live
- should live
- was raised

### Translation Words - UST

- The Messiah died
- who died
- who live
- should...live
- God raised from the dead

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And **he died** for all so that those **who live should live** no longer for themselves, but for the one **who died** for them and **was raised**.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> **The Messiah died** for all, so that those **who live** should not **live** for themselves, but should live for the Messiah, **who died** for their sins; and he is the one whom **God raised from the dead**.

## 2 Corinthians 5:16

### Connecting Statement:

Because of Christ's love and death, we are not to judge by human standards. We are appointed to teach others how to be united with and have peace with God through Christ's death and receive God's righteousness through Christ.

### Therefore (ULT)

### Since (UST)

Here, **Therefore** refers to what Paul has just said about living for Christ instead of living for self.

### Translation Words - ULT

- regard
- we regarded
- we...regard him {that way}
- the flesh
- the flesh (2)
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- we judge
- viewed
- we judge
- to the way the unbelievers judge
- these human standards (2)
- the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Therefore, from now on we regard no one according to the flesh. Even if we regarded Christ according to the flesh, yet now we no longer regard him {that way}.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Since we live no longer for ourselves, we judge no one according to the way the unbelievers judge. We once even viewed the Messiah by these human standards. But as the Messiahians, now we judge no one like this.

## 2 Corinthians 5:17

**he is} a new creation (ULT)**

**he becomes a new person (UST)**

Paul speaks of the person who believes in Christ as if God had created a **new** person. Alternate translation: "he is a new person" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The old things passed away (ULT)**

**Everything from the past is gone (UST)**

Here, **The old things** refers to the things that characterized a person before they trusted in Christ.

**behold (ULT)**

**See (UST)**

The word **behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is} in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [he is} a...creation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [is joined with the Messiah and trusts in him](#)
- [the Messiah and trusts in him](#)
- [person](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, if anyone [{is} in Christ](#), [{he is} a new creation](#). The old things passed away; behold, new things have come. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When anyone [is joined with the Messiah and trusts in him](#), he becomes a new [person](#). Everything from the past is gone—See!— God makes everything in you new.



## 2 Corinthians 5:18

**these things...all (ULT)**  
**All these gifts...Now...All these gifts...Now (UST)**

Here, **all these things** refers to what Paul has just said in the previous verse about new things replacing old things.

**the ministry of {this} reconciliation (ULT)**  
**the responsibility of announcing that he is bringing people and himself together (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **reconciliation**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "the ministry of reconciling people to him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [who reconciled](#)
- [of...reconciliation](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [ministry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [He made peace](#)
- [announcing that he is bringing people and himself together](#)
- [the cross of the Messiah](#)
- [responsibility](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now all these things {are} from [God](#), the one [who reconciled](#) us to himself through [Christ](#) and has given us the [ministry](#) of {this} [reconciliation](#),

### UST

<sup>18</sup> All these gifts come from [God](#). [He made peace](#) with us so that we are no longer enemies of God. Now we have peace with God through [the cross of the Messiah](#). Also, God has given us the [responsibility of announcing that he is bringing people and himself together](#).

## 2 Corinthians 5:19

**in Christ was reconciling the world to himself (ULT)**

**and is how God made peace with the world by what the Messiah did. God is (UST)**

Here, **the world** refers to the people in the world. Alternate translation: "in Christ, God was reconciling mankind to himself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in...having placed...us the word of reconciliation (ULT)**

**by what...has given...us...this message that makes peace and brings God and people together (UST)**

God has given Paul the responsibility to spread the message that God is reconciling people to himself.

**the word of reconciliation (ULT)**

**this message that makes peace and brings God and people together (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the message about reconciliation"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [reconciling](#)
- [of reconciliation](#)
- [the world](#)
- [trespasses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brings God and people together](#)
- [and is how God made peace](#)
- [makes peace and brings God and people together](#)
- [with the world](#)
- [by what...the Messiah did](#)
- [the Messiah did](#)
- [sins](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> namely, that [God in Christ](#) was [reconciling the world](#) to himself, not counting their [trespasses](#) against them, and having placed in us the word of [reconciliation](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> That message [brings God and people together and is how God made peace with the world by what the Messiah did](#). God is not applying their [sins](#) to their account. Instead, the Messiah has taken our sins away and has given us this message that [makes peace and brings God and people together](#).

## 2 Corinthians 5:20

**Therefore, we are ambassadors on behalf of Christ (ULT)**

**So God has appointed us to represent the Messiah (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God has appointed us as Christ's representatives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**on behalf of Christ...we are ambassadors (ULT)  
to represent the Messiah...God has appointed us (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we are those who speak for Christ"

**Be reconciled to God (ULT)**

**Through the Messiah, let him make peace with you and bring you to himself (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Let God reconcile you to himself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we are ambassadors](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Christ \(2\)](#)
- [as though](#)
- [God](#)
- [to God](#)
- [is appealing](#)
- [Be reconciled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God has appointed us](#)
- [God has appointed us](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah's \(2\)](#)
- [God](#)
- [him](#)
- [pleads with you](#)
- [Through the Messiah, let...make peace with you and bring you to himself](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, [we are ambassadors](#) on behalf of [Christ](#), as though [God is appealing](#) through us: We implore {you} on behalf of [Christ](#): "[Be reconciled to God!](#)"

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So [God has appointed us](#) to represent [the Messiah](#). [God pleads with you](#) through us. So we plead with you on [the Messiah's](#) behalf: [Through the Messiah, let him make peace with you and bring you to himself.](#)

## 2 Corinthians 5:21

### The one who did not know sin, he made sin for us

Alternate translation: "God made Christ become the sacrifice for our sin"

### us...we (ULT) for all the sinful things that we do, just as if Jesus had done those sinful things himself... has declared us no longer guilty for our sins (UST)

Here the words **us** and **we** are inclusive and refer to all believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### The one who did not know sin (ULT) Jesus never sinned (UST)

Alternate translation: "Christ, the one who never sinned"

### so that we might become {the} righteousness of God in him (ULT) You must believe that even though...And because of our close relationship with Christ, God has declared us no longer guilty for our sins (UST)

The phrase **the righteousness of God** refers to the righteousness that God requires and which comes from God. Alternate translation: "so that we might have God's righteousness in us through Christ" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who did...know](#)
- [sin](#)
- [sin \(2\)](#)
- [the} righteousness](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...sinned](#)
- [Jesus...sinned](#)
- [for all the sinful things that we do, just as if Jesus had done those sinful things himself \(2\)](#)
- [God](#)
- [has declared us no longer guilty for our sins](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The one [who did](#) not [know sin](#) he made [sin](#) for us, so that we might become [{the} righteousness of God](#) in him.

5:17 <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>21</sup> You must believe that even though [Jesus](#) never [sinned](#), God punished him [for all the sinful things that we do, just as if Jesus had done those sinful things himself](#). And because of our close relationship with Christ, [God has declared us no longer guilty for our sins](#).

## 2 Corinthians 6

### 2 Corinthians 6 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 2 and 16-18, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Servants

Paul refers to Christians as servants of God. God calls Christians to serve him in all circumstances. Paul describes some of the difficult circumstances in which he and his companions served God.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Contrasts

Paul uses four pairs of contrasts: righteousness versus lawlessness, light versus darkness, Christ versus Satan, and the temple of God versus idols. These contrasts show a difference between Christians and non-Christians. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [light](#), [luminary](#), [shine](#), [brighten](#), [enlighten](#) and [darkness](#))

##### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

##### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses a series of rhetorical questions to teach his readers. All of these questions make essentially the same point: Christians should not intimately fellowship with those who live in sin. Paul repeats these questions for emphasis. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun “we” to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

## 2 Corinthians 6:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul summarizes how working together for God is supposed to be.

**working together {with him (ULT)**

**We work together (UST)**

Paul is implying that he and Timothy are **working** with God.

Alternate translation: “working together with God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**we also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain (ULT)**

**and we beg you not to receive the gift of God’s love in a way that makes no difference for you (UST)**

Paul pleads with the Corinthians to allow the **grace of God** to be effective in their lives. If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... in vain**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: “we beg you to make use of the grace that you have received from God” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we...urge](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [grace](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we beg you](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [gift](#)
- [God’s love](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now working together {with him}, we also [urge](#) you not [to receive](#) the [grace of God](#) in vain—

### UST

<sup>1</sup> We work together, and [we beg you](#) not [to receive](#) the [gift of God’s love](#) in a way that makes no difference for you.

## 2 Corinthians 6:2

### for he says (ULT)

This introduces a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. Alternate translation: “for God says in scripture” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Behold (ULT)

The word **Behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- At an...time
- is} a...time
- a day
- is} a day
- of salvation
- of salvation (2)
- favorable

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- save, saved, safe, salvation (2)
- day
- day
- time, untimely, date
- time, untimely, date

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> for he says, “At an acceptable time I listened to you, and in a day of salvation I helped you.” Behold, now {is} a favorable time. Look, now {is} a day of salvation—

### UST

<sup>2</sup> For God said, “At a time when I displayed my loving mercy, I listened to you, And when I completed the work of my salvation, I helped you.” Look, this is the day when God is having mercy on you; this is the day that he is rescuing you.

## 2 Corinthians 6:3

**giving no cause for offense in anything (ULT)**  
**We certainly do not want to give anyone**  
**reason to do wrong (UST)**

Paul speaks of anything that would prevent a person from trusting in Christ as if it were a physical object over which that person trips and falls. Alternate translation: “we do not want to do anything that will prevent people from believing our message” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**our} ministry might not be blamed (ULT)**  
**we want no one to accuse us of preaching the**  
**good news in order to encourage evil doing**  
**(UST)**

The word **discredited** refers to people speaking badly about Paul’s ministry, and working against the message he proclaims. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one will be able to speak badly about our ministry” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cause for offense](#)
- [ministry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [reason to do wrong](#)
- [preaching the good news in order to encourage evil doing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> giving no [cause for offense](#) in anything, so that {our} [ministry](#) might not be blamed,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> We certainly do not want to give anyone [reason to do wrong](#), because we want no one to accuse us of [preaching the good news in order to encourage evil doing](#).



## 2 Corinthians 6:4

**we commend (ULT)**

**We have proved (UST)**

When Paul uses **we** here, he is referring to himself and Timothy.  
(See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**we commend ourselves in everything as servants of God (ULT)**

**We have proved...again and again...that we are God's true servants (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we prove that we are God's servants by all that we do"

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> instead, we commend ourselves in everything [as servants of God](#); in much [endurance](#), in [tribulations](#), in [hardships](#), in distresses,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> We have proved again and again that [we are God's true servants](#). We endure great [suffering](#), [we face](#) with [courage people who hurt us](#), and we live through hard times.

**God's servants; in much endurance, affliction, distress, hardship**

Paul mentions these difficult situations in which they proved that they are **God's servants**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [servants](#)
- [of God](#)
- [endurance](#)
- [tribulations](#)
- [hardships](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we are God's true servants](#)
- [we are God's true servants](#)
- [we are God's true servants](#)
- [We...suffering](#)
- [we face...courage people who hurt us](#)
- [we face...courage people who hurt us](#)

## 2 Corinthians 6:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- imprisonments
- hard labors
- hungers

### Translation Words - UST

- others have locked us up in prisons
- we have done hard physical labor
- we have often gone with very little food

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> in beatings, in **imprisonments**, in riots, in **hard labors**, in sleeplessness {nights}, in **hungers**,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> People have beaten us very badly; **others have locked us up in prisons**; we were the cause for people to riot; **we have done hard physical labor**; we have passed many long nights without sleep, and **we have often gone with very little food**.

## 2 Corinthians 6:6

**in purity...in...sincere love (ULT)**  
**But in all this, our lives are pure...But in all this...we love others (UST)**

Paul lists several moral virtues that they maintained in difficult situations that proved that they are God's servants.

### Translation Words - ULT

- knowledge
- patience
- kindness
- the Holy Spirit
- love

### Translation Words - UST

- our knowledge is deep
- we are able to wait until God ends our suffering
- We know how kind the Messiah is
- the Holy Spirit
- we love others

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> in purity, in knowledge, in patience, in kindness, in the Holy Spirit, in sincere love,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But in all this, our lives are pure, our knowledge is deep, and we are able to wait until God ends our suffering. We know how kind the Messiah is to us; we are filled with the Holy Spirit, and we love others.



## **2 Corinthians 6:7**

## in the word of truth, in the power of God

Their dedication to preach the gospel **in the power of God** proves that they are God's servants.

### in {the} word of truth (ULT)

### We live according to God's true Word, and (UST)

Alternate translation: "by speaking God's message about truth" or "by speaking God's true message"

### in...the} power of God (ULT) and we have God's power (UST)

Alternate translation: "by showing God's power to people"

### through the weapons of righteousness {for} the right hand and {the} left (ULT)

### This is the truth that we continuously believe; it is like armor that a soldier wears, and like weapons for both of his hands (UST)

Paul speaks of their **righteousness** as if it is **weapons** that they use to fight spiritual battles. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the weapons of righteousness (ULT)

### This is the truth that we continuously believe; it is like armor that a soldier wears...weapons (UST)

Alternate translation: "righteousness as our armor" or "righteousness as our weapons"

### the...for...right hand and {the} left (ULT) weapons...for both of his hands (UST)

This could mean: (1) there is a weapon in one hand and a shield in the other. (2) they are completely equipped for battle, able to fend off attacks from any direction.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of truth
- the} power
- of God
- weapons
- of righteousness
- for...right hand

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> in {the} word of truth, in {the} power of God; through the weapons of righteousness {for} the right hand and {the} left,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> We live according to God's true Word, and we have God's power. By means of the Messiah, God has put us right with himself. This is the truth that we continuously believe; it is like armor that a soldier wears, and like weapons for both of his hands.

## Translation Words - UST

- true
- we have...power
- God's
- This is the truth that we continuously believe; it is like armor that a soldier wears
- weapons
- for both of his hands

## 2 Corinthians 6:8

### General Information:

Paul lists several extremes of how people think about him and his ministry. (See: [Merism](#))

### as deceivers (ULT)

### They accuse us of lying (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people accuse us of being deceitful" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- honor
- dishonor
- bad report
- as
- deceivers
- true

### Translation Words - UST

- people honor us
- they dishonor us
- they say many evil things about us
- They accuse us of lying
- They accuse us of lying
- we tell the truth

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> through honor and dishonor, through bad report and good report; as deceivers, yet true;

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Sometimes people honor us; at other times, they dishonor us. Sometimes they say many evil things about us; at other times, they praise us. They accuse us of lying, even though we tell the truth.



## 2 Corinthians 6:9

**as being unknown, yet being well known (ULT)**  
**We live like persons whom nobody knows, but**  
**some people know us very well (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "as if people did not know us and yet people still know us well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as being disciplined, yet not being put to**  
**death (ULT)**  
**announcing the message about the Messiah...**  
**even though no one legally ever condemns us**  
**to death (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "we work as if people are punishing us for our actions but not as if they have condemned us to death" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> as being unknown, yet being well known; as dying yet—behold!—living; as being disciplined, yet not being put to death;

### UST

<sup>9</sup> We live like persons whom nobody knows, but some people know us very well. Some try to kill us for announcing the message about the Messiah, even though no one legally ever condemns us to death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- as (2)
- as (3)
- being unknown
- being well known
- dying
- being put to death
- living
- being disciplined

### Translation Words - UST

- We live like persons whom nobody knows
- Some try to kill us (2)
- announcing the message about the Messiah (3)
- We live like persons whom nobody knows
- some people know us very well
- Some try to kill us
- legally...condemns us to death
- announcing the message about the Messiah
- announcing the message about the Messiah

## 2 Corinthians 6:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- as (2)
- as (3)
- rejoicing
- possessing

### Translation Words - UST

- We live with great sorrow
- We live as some of the poorest people (2)
- nothing (3)
- we...rejoice
- belong to us

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> as being sorrowful, but always rejoicing; as poor, but making many rich; as having nothing, yet possessing all things.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> We live with great sorrow but we always rejoice. We live as some of the poorest people, but we have the treasure of the good news that makes many rich. You can see that we own nothing, but the truth is that all things belong to us.

## 2 Corinthians 6:11

**Our mouth has been opened toward you (ULT)  
We have spoken to you very openly and  
honestly (UST)**

Alternate translation: "We have spoken honestly to you"

**our heart has been opened wide (ULT)  
We have freely shown you that we love you  
(UST)**

Paul speaks of his great affection for the Corinthians as having a **heart** that is open. Alternate translation: "we love you very much" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**our heart has been opened wide (ULT)  
We have freely shown you that we love you (UST)**

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's emotions. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Corinthians](#)
- [heart](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believers at Corinth](#)
- [We have freely shown you that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Our mouth has been opened toward you, [Corinthians](#); our [heart](#) has been opened wide.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> We have spoken to you very openly and honestly, [fellow believers at Corinth](#). [We have freely shown you that we love you.](#)

## 2 Corinthians 6:12

**You are not restricted by us, but you are restricted by your affections (ULT)**  
**We are not the ones holding back, but you seem to be reluctant to show that you love us (UST)**

Paul speaks of the Corinthians lack of love for him as if their **inner parts** were squeezed into a tight space. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You are not restricted by us (ULT)**  
**We are not the ones holding back...us (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We have not restrained you" or "We have not given you any reason to stop loving us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but you are restricted by your affections (ULT)**  
**but you seem to be reluctant to show that you love (UST)**

Here, **inner parts** is a metonym for a person's emotions. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**but you are restricted by your affections (ULT)**  
**but you seem to be reluctant to show that you love (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "but your own hearts are restraining you" or "but you have stopped loving us for your own reasons" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You are not restricted by us, but you are restricted by your affections;

### UST

<sup>12</sup> We are not the ones holding back, but you seem to be reluctant to show that you love us.

## 2 Corinthians 6:13

### open yourselves wide also (ULT) for you to love us in return (UST)

Paul urges the Corinthians to love him as he has loved them.  
Alternate translation: “love us back” or “love us much as we have loved you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [to children](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [as](#)
- [to children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> and {in} the same exchange—I speak [as to children](#)—open yourselves wide also.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> It would be a fair exchange—I am speaking [as to children](#)—for you to love us in return.



## **2 Corinthians 6:14**

## Do not be yoked together with unbelievers (ULT)

### Do not work in unsuitable ways with people who do not trust the Messiah (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... unbelievers**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "Only be tied together with believers" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

## Do not be yoked together (ULT)

### Do not work in unsuitable ways (UST)

Paul speaks of working **together** toward a common purpose as if it were two animals tied together to pull a plow or cart. Alternate translation: "Do not team up" or "Do not have a close relationship" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## for what partnership {does} righteousness and lawlessness {have} (ULT) People who live by God's measure and rules have nothing in common with those who break his laws and (UST)

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "For righteousness can have no association with lawlessness." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Or what fellowship {does} light {have} with darkness (ULT) do whatever they want. Darkness and light cannot be together (UST)

Paul asks this question to emphasize that **light** and **darkness** cannot coexist since light dispels darkness. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "And light can have no fellowship with darkness!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Or what fellowship {does} light {have} with darkness (ULT) do whatever they want. Darkness and light cannot be together (UST)

The words **light** and **darkness** refer to the moral and spiritual qualities of believers and unbelievers. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Do...yoked together
- with unbelievers
- does} righteousness
- lawlessness
- fellowship
- light
- darkness

## ULT

<sup>14</sup> Do not be **yoked together with unbelievers**, for what partnership {does} **righteousness** and **lawlessness** {have}? Or what **fellowship** {does} **light** {have} with **darkness**?

## UST

<sup>14</sup> Do not **work in unsuitable ways with people who do not trust the Messiah**. People who **live by God's measure and rules** have nothing in common with **those who break his laws** and do whatever they want. **Darkness** and **light cannot be together**.



## Translation Words - UST

- Do...work in unsuitable ways
- with people who do not trust the Messiah
- People...live by God's measure and rules
- those who break his laws
- Darkness
- light
- cannot be together

## 2 Corinthians 6:15

**And what harmony {does} Christ {have} with Beliar (ULT)**

**Messiah cannot in any way be in agreement with the demon Beliar (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no agreement between Christ and Beliar!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Beliar (ULT)  
the demon Beliar (UST)**

**Beliar** is another name for the devil. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Or what share {does} a believer {have} with an unbeliever (ULT)  
A person who trusts in God has nothing in common with another person who does not trust in God (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "And a believer shares nothing in common with an unbeliever!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [a believer](#)
- [an unbeliever](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [A person who trusts in God](#)
- [another person who does not trust in God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And what harmony {does} [Christ](#) {have} with Beliar? Or what share {does} [a believer](#) {have} with [an unbeliever](#)?

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> [Messiah](#) cannot in any way be in agreement with the demon Beliar. [A person who trusts in God](#) has nothing in common with [another person who does not trust in God](#).



## **2 Corinthians 6:16**

**And what agreement {does} the temple of God {have} with idols (ULT)**  
**It is not right to bring pagan idols into the temple of God (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "And there is no agreement between the temple of God and idols!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**For we are the temple of the living God (ULT)**  
**And our bodies are like the temple of the living God (UST)**

Here, **we** refers not only to Paul and his associates, but includes all Christians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**For we are the temple of the living God (ULT)**  
**And our bodies are like the temple of the living God (UST)**

Paul speaks of Christians as forming a **temple** for **God** to dwell in. Alternate translation: "we are like the temple where the living God dwells" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will dwell among them, and walk among them (ULT)**  
**I will have my home among my people. I will live my life among them (UST)**

This is an Old Testament quotation that speaks of God being with the people in two different ways that mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**I will dwell among them, and walk among them (ULT)**  
**I will have my home among my people. I will live my life among them (UST)**

The words **dwell among** speak of living where others live, while the words **walk among** speak of being with them as they go about their lives. Alternate translation: "I will be with them and help them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the temple](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of...God \(2\)](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [my people](#)
- [people](#)
- [idols](#)
- [the living](#)
- [just as](#)

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> And what agreement {does} [the temple of God](#) {have} with [idols](#)? For we are [the temple of the living God, just as God](#) said: "I will dwell among them, and [walk among them](#); and I will be their [God](#), and they themselves will be [my people](#)."

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> It is not right to bring [pagan idols](#) into [the temple of God](#). And our bodies are like [the temple of the living God, just as God said](#): "I will have my home among my people. [I will live my life among them](#). I will be their [God](#) and they will be [my people](#)."

- walk among them

## Translation Words - UST

- pagan idols
- the temple
- the temple
- my people
- people
- of God
- of the...God (2)
- God said
- God
- living
- just as
- I will live my life among them

## 2 Corinthians 6:17

### General Information:

Paul quotes portions from the Old Testament prophets, Isaiah and Ezekiel.

### be separate (ULT)

### be separate from them (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “set yourselves apart” or “allow me to set you apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### touch no unclean thing (ULT)

### Do not handle...anything that makes you filthy and unable to worship me (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **no unclean**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: “touch only things that are clean” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [be separate](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [unclean thing](#)
- [will welcome](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [be separate from them](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [anything that makes you filthy and unable to worship me](#)
- [will open my arms and welcome](#)

### ULT

17 Therefore, “Come out from {the} midst them, and [be separate](#),” says [the Lord](#), “and touch no [unclean thing](#),” “and I [will welcome](#) you.”

### UST

17 The scriptures therefore say: “Come out from among the unbelievers and [be separate from them](#),” says [the Lord](#), “Do not handle [anything that makes you filthy and unable to worship me](#); and I [will open my arms and welcome](#) you,

## 2 Corinthians 6:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a Father
- sons
- the Lord
- Almighty

### Translation Words - UST

- Father
- sons
- all-powerful
- the...Lord

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> "And I will be to you as a Father, and you will be to me as sons and daughters," says the Lord Almighty.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> and I will be your Father, and you will be my sons and daughters." says the all-powerful Lord.



## 2 Corinthians 7

### 2 Corinthians 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In verses 2-4, Paul finishes his defense. He then writes about Titus' return and the comfort it brought.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Clean and unclean

Christians are "clean" in the sense that God has cleansed them from sin. They do not need to be concerned with being clean according to the law of Moses. Ungodly living can still make a Christian unclean. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

##### Sadness and sorrow

The words "sad" and "sorrow" in this chapter indicate that the Corinthians were upset to the point of repenting. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun "we" to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

##### Original situation

This chapter discusses in detail a previous situation. We can figure out some aspects of this situation from the information in this chapter. But it is best not to include this type of implicit information in a translation. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## 2 Corinthians 7:1

**beloved (ULT)**

**Dear ones (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you whom I love" or "dear friends"

**let us cleanse ourselves (ULT)**

**we should stop doing (UST)**

Here Paul is saying to stay away from any form of sin that would affect one's relationship with God.

**perfecting holiness (ULT)**

**Let us keep trying to avoid sinning; let us keep honoring (UST)**

Alternate translation: "striving to be holy"

**in {the} fear of God (ULT)**

**God and trembling in his presence (UST)**

Alternate translation: "out of deep respect for God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- beloved
- promises
- let us cleanse
- of flesh
- spirit
- holiness
- the} fear
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- Dear ones
- God has promised to do these things for us
- we should stop doing
- with our bodies
- minds
- Let us keep trying to avoid sinning; let us keep honoring
- God
- trembling in his presence

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, beloved, having these promises, let us cleanse ourselves from every defilement of flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in {the} fear of God.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Dear ones, since God has promised to do these things for us, we should stop doing anything with our bodies or minds that keeps us from worshiping God. Let us keep trying to avoid sinning; let us keep honoring God and trembling in his presence.

## 2 Corinthians 7:2

### Connecting Statement:

Having already warned the people of Corinth about other leaders who were striving to get these Corinthian believers to follow them, Paul reminds the people of the way he feels about them.

### Make room for us (ULT)

### Open your hearts to us (UST)

This refers back to what Paul said starting in [2 Corinthians 6:11](#) about them opening their hearts to him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Make room for us (ULT)

### Open your hearts to us (UST)

Paul speaks of the Corinthians loving him as if they were opening their hearts to him. Alternate translation: "Make room for us in your hearts" or "Love us and accept us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Make room](#)
- [We wronged](#)
- [we ruined](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Open your hearts](#)
- [No matter what you may have heard about us, we have...wronged](#)
- [And we have never taken advantage of anyone](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [Make room](#) for us! [We wronged](#) no one; [we ruined](#) no one; we took advantage of no one.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Open your hearts](#) to us! [No matter what you may have heard about us, we have not wronged anyone. And we have never taken advantage of anyone.](#)

## 2 Corinthians 7:3

### I do not speak for {your} condemnation (ULT)

### I do not scold you to condemn you (UST)

Here, Paul refers back to what he has just said about not having wronged anyone. Alternate translation: "I do not say this to accuse you of having done wrong."

### you are in our hearts (ULT)

### We love you with all...our...hearts...we will...die with you (UST)

Paul speaks of his and his associates' great love for the Corinthians as if they held them in their hearts. Alternate translation: "you are very dear to us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to die together and to live together (ULT)

### We are united in purpose and...we will...live with you and...die with you (UST)

This means that Paul and his associates will continue to love the Corinthians no matter what happens. Alternate translation: "whether we live or whether we die" (See: [Idiom](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [your} condemnation](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [to die together](#)
- [to live together](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [to condemn you](#)
- [We love you with all...hearts](#)
- [We are united in purpose and...live with you](#)
- [we will...die with you](#)

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> I do not speak for [{your} condemnation](#); for I have already said that you are in our [hearts to die together](#) and [to live together](#).

## UST

<sup>3</sup> I do not scold you [to condemn you](#). [We love you with all our hearts! We are united in purpose and we will live with you and die with you.](#)

## 2 Corinthians 7:4

### I have been filled with encouragement (ULT) and I am filled...with such joy (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “You fill me with comfort” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### I overflow with {this} joy (ULT) with such joy (UST)

Paul speaks of **joy** as if it is a liquid that fills him until he overflows. Alternate translation: “I am extremely joyful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### with encouragement...in all our...afflictions (ULT) with such joy...even when we are going...through severe afflictions (UST)

Alternate translation: “despite all our hardships”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [is...confidence](#)
- [is...boasting](#)
- [with encouragement](#)
- [with...joy](#)
- [afflictions](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [praise...to others](#)
- [with such joy](#)
- [with such joy](#)
- [because](#)
- [through severe afflictions](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Great {is} my [confidence](#) in you; great {is} my [boasting](#) on your behalf. I have been filled [with encouragement](#). I overflow with {this} [joy](#) in all our [afflictions](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Moreover, I not only love you, I [praise](#) you [to others](#)—and I am filled up to overflowing [with such joy because](#) of you, even when we are going [through severe afflictions](#).

## 2 Corinthians 7:5

### having come to Macedonia (ULT) we came to you in Macedonia (UST)

Here the word **we** refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Corinthians or Titus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### our flesh had no relief at all (ULT) we were exhausted (UST)

Here, **our flesh** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “we had no rest” or “we were very tired” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### being afflicted in every {way} (ULT) on every...we faced hardships (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “we experienced every kind of trouble” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### conflicts without, fears within (ULT) side...that other people caused...we feared many things (UST)

Here, **without** could mean: (1) “outside of our bodies.” (2) “outside of the church.” The word **within** refers to their inward emotions. Alternate translation: “by conflicts with other people and by fears within ourselves” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Macedonia
- flesh
- relief
- fears

### Translation Words - UST

- you in Macedonia
- we were exhausted
- we were exhausted
- we feared many things

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For even having come to Macedonia, our flesh had no relief at all, but being afflicted in every {way}—conflicts without, fears within.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When we came to you in Macedonia, we were exhausted. We had troubles on every side—we faced hardships that other people caused, and we feared many things.

## 2 Corinthians 7:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- who comforts
- humble
- comforted
- of Titus

### Translation Words - UST

- always comforts
- us when we are discouraged
- he
- and...comforted...at that time
- Titus to be with us

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But God, the one who comforts the humble, comforted us by the arrival of Titus,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But God always comforts us when we are discouraged, and he comforted us at that time by sending Titus to be with us.

## 2 Corinthians 7:7

**by the comfort with which he was comforted  
by you (ULT)**

**you...comforted him when you were with him  
(UST)**

Paul received **comfort** from knowing that the Corinthians had **comforted** Titus. Alternate translation: "by learning about the comfort that Titus had received from you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [comfort](#)
- [he was comforted](#)
- [reporting](#)
- [and...zeal](#)
- [was caused to rejoice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you...comforted him](#)
- [you...comforted him](#)
- [When he came to us, he told](#)
- [He also told us about how you were deeply concerned](#)
- [rejoiced](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> and not only by his arrival, but also by the [comfort](#) with which [he was comforted](#) by you, [reporting](#) to us your longing, your mourning, {and} your [zeal](#) for my sake, so that I [was caused to rejoice](#) even more.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Titus's coming was a great comfort, but you also [comforted him](#) when you were with him. [When he came to us, he told](#) us of your deep love for us, and how you were sorry for us in our sufferings. [He also told us about how you were deeply concerned](#) for me, so I [rejoiced](#) even more because of you.



## 2 Corinthians 7:8

**that letter (ULT)**  
**what I wrote to you was necessary to help you deal with...the problems...that (UST)**

This refers to Paul's previous **letter** to these Corinthian believers where he rebuked them for their acceptance of a believer's sexual immorality with his father's wife.

**For...seeing...that letter (ULT)**  
**I know...I did regret it when I wrote it...what I wrote to you was necessary to help you deal with...the problems...that (UST)**

Alternate translation: "when I learned that my letter"

### Translation Words - ULT

- letter
- letter
- an hour

### Translation Words - UST

- letter I wrote to you
- what I wrote to you
- only...a short time

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For even if I grieved you in the **letter**, I do not regret {it} (even though I did regret {it}, seeing that that **letter** grieved you, if only for **an hour**).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> I know the **letter I wrote to you** made you sad, but I had to write it. I did regret it when I wrote it, but **what I wrote to you** was necessary to help you deal with the problems in the church. I knew that your sorrow would last **only** for **a short time**.

## 2 Corinthians 7:9

### not that you were grieved (ULT) not because you were sad when you read my letter (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “not because what I said in my letter distressed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you would not suffer loss in anything through us (ULT) you had lost (UST)

This means that although the letter caused them sorrow, they eventually benefited from the letter because it led them to repentance. Alternate translation: “so that we did not harm you in any way” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I rejoice](#)
- [repentance](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I can rejoice](#)
- [turned you away from the sin that was hurting you so much](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now [I rejoice](#), not that you were grieved, but that you were grieved to {the point of} [repentance](#). For you were grieved with respect to [God](#), so that you would not suffer loss in anything through us.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> And so now [I can rejoice](#), not because you were sad when you read my letter, but because your sorrow [turned you away from the sin that was hurting you so much](#), and it changed your sadness into a sorrow that [God](#) brought to you, a sorrow that gave you so much more than you had lost.

## 2 Corinthians 7:10

**For the sorrow with respect to God...  
repentance towards salvation...works (ULT)  
This kind of sorrow turns a person away from  
sin so that God can rescue him...because you  
were caught in them...a sadness...your sins  
only (UST)**

The word **repentance** may be repeated to clarify its relationship to what precedes it and what follows it. Alternate translation: "For godly sorrow produces repentance, and repentance leads to salvation"  
(See: [Ellipsis](#))

**without regret (ULT)  
On the other hand (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul has no **regret** that he caused them sorrow because that sorrow led to their repentance and salvation. (2) the Corinthians will not **regret** experiencing sorrow because it led to their repentance and salvation.

**But the sorrow of the world produces death (ULT)  
people are glad, in the end, to have had this kind of sorrow...worldly sorrow...  
for...can lead only to death (UST)**

This kind of **sorrow** leads to **death** instead of salvation because it does not produce repentance. Alternate translation: "Worldly sorrow, however, leads to spiritual death" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [works](#)
- [repentance](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [of...world](#)
- [death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [turns a person away from sin](#)
- [God](#)
- [can rescue him](#)
- [worldly](#)
- [a sadness...your sins only](#)
- [only to death](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For the sorrow with respect to [God](#) [works repentance](#) towards [salvation](#) without regret. But the sorrow of the [world](#) produces [death](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> This kind of sorrow [turns a person away from sin](#) so that [God can rescue him](#); people are glad, in the end, to have had this kind of sorrow. On the other hand, [worldly](#) sorrow, [a sadness for your sins only](#) because you were caught in them, can lead [only to death](#).

## 2 Corinthians 7:11

### what defense (ULT)

### You wanted to show me you were innocent (UST)

Here the word **what** makes this statement an exclamation. Alternate translation: "your determination to prove you were innocent was very great!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

### and} what vindication (ULT)

### You wanted justice to be done (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that someone should carry out justice" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- fear
- zeal
- vindication
- pure

### Translation Words - UST

- you had this sorrow that God gave you
- and you were so worried about how that person had sinned
- You wanted justice to be done
- You wanted justice to be done
- were innocent

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For behold how much earnestness this same {thing} produced in you, to be made sorrowful with respect to **God**: what defense, what indignation, what **fear**, what longing, what **zeal**, {and} what **vindication**! In everything you proved yourselves to be **pure** in {this} matter.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Now think about how much good you wanted to do because **you had this sorrow that God gave you**. You wanted to show me you were innocent. You were so concerned about that accusation of sin, **and you were so worried about how that person had sinned**. **You wanted justice to be done**. In sum, you showed that you **were innocent**.

## 2 Corinthians 7:12

**your earnestness which {is} on our behalf  
might be revealed to you before God (ULT)  
for you to understand how much you are  
faithful to us. God knows that you are faithful  
to us (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that you would know that your good will toward us is sincere" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the one...before...God (ULT)  
for the...God...knows (UST)**

Here, **before God** refers to God's presence. See how you translated this in [2 Corinthians 4:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who did wrong](#)
- [who suffered the wrong](#)
- [might be revealed](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wrongdoer](#)
- [who suffered the wrong](#)
- [you to understand how much](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So even though I wrote to you, {it was} not for the sake of the one [who did wrong](#), nor for the sake of the one [who suffered the wrong](#), but so that your earnestness which {is} on our behalf [might be revealed](#) to you before [God](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> What I wrote to you was not intended for the [wrongdoer](#), and it was not written either for the one [who suffered the wrong](#), but it was written for [you to understand how much](#) you are faithful to us. [God](#) knows that you are faithful to us.

## 2 Corinthians 7:13

**For this reason we have been encouraged (ULT)**

**By all of this we are very encouraged (UST)**

Here the phrase **this reason** refers to the way the Corinthians responded to Paul's previous letter, as he described in the previous verse. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "This is what encourages us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**his spirit had been refreshed by all of you (ULT)**

**you had given him rest and helped him (UST)**

Here the word **spirit** refers to a person's temperament and disposition. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "all of you refreshed his spirit" or "all of you made him stop worrying" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- we have been encouraged
- encouragement
- we rejoiced
- joy
- of Titus
- spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- we are very encouraged
- We were...happy...and
- Titus
- we were also happy
- we were also happy
- you had given him rest and helped him

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For this reason **we have been encouraged**. Now in addition to our own **encouragement**, **we rejoiced** even more abundantly at the **joy of Titus**, because his **spirit** had been refreshed by all of you.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> By all of this **we are very encouraged!** **We were** so **happy** about what **Titus** told us, **and we were also happy** because **you had given him rest and helped him**.

## 2 Corinthians 7:14

**For if I had boasted anything to him about you (ULT)**

**I told him very good things about you, how proud I was (UST)**

Alternate translation: "For although I boasted to him about you"

**I was not ashamed (ULT)  
and you did not put me to shame (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you did not disappoint me"

**our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true**

Alternate translation: "you proved to Titus that our boasting about you was true"

### Translation Words - ULT

- I had boasted
- boasting
- I was...ashamed
- as
- truth
- truth
- Titus

### Translation Words - UST

- I told...how proud I was
- praised you
- of you...to you
- all true
- and you did...put me to shame
- when he came
- to Titus

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For if I had boasted anything to him about you, I was not ashamed, but as we spoke everything to you in truth, in the same way also our boasting became the truth to Titus.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> I told him very good things about you, how proud I was of you, and you did not put me to shame when he came to you. We praised you so much to Titus, and you proved it was all true!

## 2 Corinthians 7:15

### the obedience of all of you (ULT) how much you follow God (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **obedience**, you could express the same idea with the verb, “obey.” Alternate translation: “how all of you obeyed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### you received him with fear and trembling (ULT) and he knows how you welcomed him among yourselves—you welcomed him...with...fear, because...and with trembling, because you know God is great (UST)

Here, **fear** and **trembling** share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of fear. Alternate translation: “you welcomed him with great reverence” (See: [Doublet](#))

### And...with fear...trembling (ULT) Now...with...fear, because...with trembling, because you know God is great (UST)

This could refer to: (1) great reverence for God. (2) great reverence for Titus.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [obedience](#)
- [you received](#)
- [fear](#)
- [trembling](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [follow God](#)
- [and he knows how you welcomed him among yourselves—you welcomed](#)
- [fear, because](#)
- [with trembling, because you know God is great](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And his affections towards you are more abundant, remembering the [obedience](#) of all of you, how [you received](#) him with [fear](#) and [trembling](#).

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Now his love for you has grown because he has seen for himself how much you [follow God](#), and [he knows how you welcomed him among yourselves—you welcomed](#) him with [fear, because](#) God is holy, and [with trembling, because you know God is great](#).



## 2 Corinthians 7:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I rejoice
- I am confident

### Translation Words - UST

- I am filled with joy
- I have confidence

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I rejoice that in everything I am confident in you.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> I am filled with joy because in everything, I have confidence in you.

## 2 Corinthians 8

### 2 Corinthians 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Chapters 8 and 9 begin a new section. Paul writes about how churches in Greece helped needy believers in Jerusalem.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted words of verse 15.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Gift to the church in Jerusalem

The church in Corinth started preparing to give money to the poor believers in Jerusalem. The churches in Macedonia also had given generously. Paul sends Titus and two other believers to Corinth to encourage the Corinthians to give generously. Paul and the others will carry the money to Jerusalem. They want people to know it is being done honestly.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### We

Paul likely uses the pronoun “we” to represent at least Timothy and himself. It may also include other people.

##### Paradox

A “paradox” is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. These words in verse 2 are a paradox: “the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity.” In verse 3 Paul explains how their poverty produced riches. Paul also uses riches and poverty in other paradoxes. ([2 Corinthians 8:2](#))

## 2 Corinthians 8:1

### Connecting Statement:

Having explained his changed plans and his ministry direction, Paul talks about giving.

**the grace of God that has been given among the churches of Macedonia (ULT)  
about how God has been kindly working in wonderful ways among the churches in the province of Macedonia (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the grace that God has given to the churches of Macedonia” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now **we make known** to you, **brothers**, the **grace of God** that has been given among the **churches of Macedonia**,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> **We want you to know, brothers and sisters, about how God** has been kindly working **in wonderful ways** among the **churches** in the **province of Macedonia**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we make known](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [grace](#)
- [of God](#)
- [churches](#)
- [of Macedonia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We want...to know](#)
- [brothers and sisters](#)
- [about how God](#)
- [in wonderful ways](#)
- [churches](#)
- [province of Macedonia](#)

## 2 Corinthians 8:2

**the abundance of their joy and their deep poverty abounded to the riches of their generosity (ULT)**

**the...they were rejoicing so much...although they are poor, they gave much money for the collection for the believers (UST)**

Paul speaks of **joy** and **poverty** as if they were living things that can produce generosity. Alternate translation: "because of the people's great joy and extreme poverty, they have become very generous" (See: [Personification](#))

**the abundance of their joy (ULT)**  
**the...were rejoicing so much (UST)**

Paul speaks of **joy** as if it were a physical object that could increase in size or quantity. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...their...deep...poverty...of their joy...the riches...of...generosity (ULT)**  
**they...were rejoicing...so much...although...are poor...the...were rejoicing...gave...much money (UST)**

Though the churches of Macedonia have suffered testings of affliction and **poverty**, by God's grace, they have been able to collect money for the believers in Jerusalem.

**of their joy...the riches...of...generosity (ULT)**  
**the...were rejoicing...gave...much money (UST)**

The word **riches** emphasizes the greatness of their generosity. Alternate translation: "a very great generosity"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of affliction](#)
- [of...joy](#)
- [abounded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Although...believers there were suffering](#)
- [were rejoicing](#)
- [the collection for the believers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> that during a severe trial [of affliction](#), the abundance of their [joy](#) and their deep poverty [abounded](#) to the riches of their generosity.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Although](#) the [believers there were suffering](#) very much, they [were rejoicing](#) so much that, although they are poor, they gave much money for [the collection for the believers](#) in Jerusalem.

## 2 Corinthians 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- I testify that
- their} ability
- their} ability (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- they were able
- they suffered need themselves, but they still gave (2)
- and I testify it is true—and some sacrificed

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For I testify that {they gave} according to {their} ability, and beyond {their} ability, of {their} own accord,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They gave as much as they were able —and I testify it is true—and some sacrificed and gave so much they suffered need themselves, but they still gave. They wanted to give,

## 2 Corinthians 8:4

**of {this} ministry that {is} to the saints (ULT)  
so they could help those believers whom God  
has set apart for himself (UST)**

Paul is referring to providing money to the believers in Jerusalem.  
Alternate translation: "this ministry of providing for the believers in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [urging](#)
- [favor](#)
- [fellowship](#)
- [of...ministry](#)
- [saints](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they begged us](#)
- [to allow them to give to](#)
- [collection](#)
- [so they could help](#)
- [believers whom God has set apart for himself](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> with much [urging](#), they pleaded with us {for} the [favor](#) and the [fellowship](#) of {this} [ministry](#) that {is} to the [saints](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> and [they begged us](#) over and over and pleaded with us [to allow them to give to](#) this [collection](#), [so they could help](#) those [believers whom God has set apart for himself](#).

## 2 Corinthians 8:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- we hoped
- to...Lord
- the} will of God
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- We did...think they could give like that
- We did...think they could give like that
- Lord
- they gave themselves
- they gave themselves

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And not **as we hoped**, but they first gave themselves to the **Lord** and then to us, by {the} will of God.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> **We did** not **think they could give like that**. But they first gave themselves to the **Lord**, and then **they gave themselves** to us.

## 2 Corinthians 8:6

**just as he begun (ULT)  
had already begun encouraging...to  
contribute money (UST)**

Paul is referring to the collection of money from the Corinthians for the believers in Jerusalem.

**he would also complete for you this grace as  
well (ULT)  
you...to guide the collection to its end (UST)**

Titus was to help the Corinthians to complete the collection of money. Alternate translation: "he should encourage you to finish collecting and giving your generous gift" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- urged
- Titus
- just as
- grace

### Translation Words - UST

- Titus
- had already begun encouraging...to contribute money
- urged him
- the collection

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So we urged Titus that, just as he begun, in the same way he would also complete for you this grace as well.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Titus had already begun encouraging you to contribute money, so we urged him to guide the collection to its end.



## 2 Corinthians 8:7

### you should abound in this act of grace (ULT) make sure you do very well by completing this collection (UST)

Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers as if they should produce physical goods. Alternate translation: “make sure you do well in giving for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- even as
- you abound
- you should abound
- in faith
- in knowledge
- in...love
- act of grace

#### Translation Words - UST

- As
- you do better than others
- make sure you do very well
- in your trust in God
- in what you have learned
- love
- collection

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But **even as you abound** in everything—in **faith** and in speech and **in knowledge** and in all earnestness and in the **love** from us in you, <sup>[1]</sup> so also **you should abound** in this **act of grace**.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> **As you do better than others**, not only **in your trust in God**, in your encouraging words, **in what you have learned**, in taking a task to completion, and in your **love** for us—**make sure you do very well** by completing this **collection** also.

## 2 Corinthians 8:8

**through the earnestness of others...proving the genuineness of your love (ULT)  
by comparing how you give to how others give to...I want you to prove how much you love...the...Lord...people in need (UST)**

Paul is encouraging the Corinthians to give generously by comparing them with the generosity of the Macedonian churches. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a command
- proving
- of...love

### Translation Words - UST

- I am...giving you an order
- to prove how much
- love...Lord

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I say this not according to a [command](#) but also [proving](#) the genuineness of your [love](#) through the earnestness of others.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> I am not [giving you an order](#), but I want you [to prove how much](#) you [love](#) the [Lord](#) by comparing how you give to how others give to people in need.

## 2 Corinthians 8:9

### the grace of our Lord (ULT) how kind our Lord (UST)

In this context, the word **grace** emphasizes the generosity with which Jesus had blessed the Corinthians.

### he became poor for your sake, {though} being rich (ULT) to you...Although he possessed everything, he gave it all up and became poor. He did this in order to (UST)

Paul speaks of Jesus before his incarnation as **being rich**, and of his becoming human as becoming **poor**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### by the poverty of that one, you might become rich (ULT) Although he possessed everything, he gave it all up and became poor. He did this in order to...make you rich (UST)

Paul speaks of the Corinthians becoming spiritually **rich** as a result of Jesus becoming human. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [you know](#)
- [grace](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [you know](#)
- [how kind](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah has been](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For [you know](#) the [grace](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#), that he became poor for your sake, {though} being rich, so that by the poverty of that one, you might become rich.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> I say this, because [you know how kind](#) our [Lord Jesus the Messiah has been](#) to you. Although he possessed everything, he gave it all up and became poor. He did this in order to make you rich.

## 2 Corinthians 8:10

### in this (ULT)

### in this (UST)

Here the word **this** refers to Corinthians collecting money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “with regard to the collection” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is profitable](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [this ministry of help](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> And I give {my} opinion in this, for this [is profitable](#) for you who not only began to do this a year ago, but also to desire {to do it}.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> And in this I have some encouragement to give you: You started [this ministry of help](#) a year ago, and when you began it you were eager to do it.

## 2 Corinthians 8:11

**just as {there was} the readiness of the desire  
(ULT)**

**Just as...you were eager to begin this work  
(UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **readiness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "just as you were eager and desired to do it" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**also...what you began} to do...completion  
(ULT)**

**In the same way...you should finish this  
work...you should be eager to end it (UST)**

Alternate translation: "complete it" or "finish it"

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But now also complete {what you began} to do, so that just as {there was} the readiness of the desire, so also {there may be} the completion, from what you have.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> In the same way, you should finish this work. Just as you were eager to begin this work, you should be eager to end it, and to do this as quickly as you can.

## 2 Corinthians 8:12

**according to whatever one might have (ULT)  
God will accept what you do in...You must  
finish the work by giving money from the  
money (UST)**

Alternate translation: "if it is proportional to what the person giving has"

### **ULT**

<sup>12</sup> For if the readiness is already there, {it is} fully acceptable according to whatever one might have, not according to what he does not have.

### **UST**

<sup>12</sup> God will accept what you do in this task, if you are eager to do it. You must finish the work by giving money from the money that you have. You cannot give what you do not have.

## 2 Corinthians 8:13

### For this

This verse refers back to collecting money for the believers in Jerusalem.

**so that {there is} relief for others {but} tribulation for you (ULT)**

**We are...taxing you...we do not want others to have to support themselves (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that you may relieve others and burden yourselves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**out of equality (ULT)**

**it is fair for you to help them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that there would be equality"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [but} tribulation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We are...taxing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For {this is} not so that {there is} relief for others {but} [tribulation](#) for you, but out of equality.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> [We are](#) not [taxing](#) you because we do not want others to have to support themselves. But it is fair for you to help them.

## 2 Corinthians 8:14

### This is also so that their abundance may supply your need

Since the Corinthians are acting in the present time, it is implied that the believers in Jerusalem will also help them at some time in the future. Alternate translation: "this is also so that in the future their abundance may supply your need"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- present time

#### Translation Words - UST

- time

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> At the present time, your abundance {is} for the lack of those {ones}, so that also the abundance of those {ones} may be for your need, so that there may be equality,

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> You have more than you need at this time; what you have left over will be enough for them, too. In the future, they will have more than they need, and perhaps then, they will be able to help you. That is fair for everyone.



## 2 Corinthians 8:15

### just as it is written (ULT)

### This is like the scriptures say (UST)

Here Paul quotes from Exodus. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "as Moses wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### did not have too little (ULT)

### did not need anything more (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... too little**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: "had all he needed" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [This is like](#)
- [the scriptures say](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [just as it is written](#): "The one {gathering} much did not have too much, and the one {gathering} little did not have too little."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [This is like the scriptures say](#): "The one who had much did not have anything left to share; but the one who had only a little did not need anything more."

## 2 Corinthians 8:16

**the one who put the same earnestness on your behalf into the heart of Titus (ULT)  
he has caused Titus to care for you as much as I do (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to the emotions. This means that God caused Titus to love them. Alternate translation: "the one who made Titus care for you as much as I do" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the same earnestness (ULT)  
to care for you as much as I do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the same enthusiasm" or "same deep concern"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [thanks {be}](#)
- [to God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of Titus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We thank](#)
- [God](#)
- [Titus](#)
- [to care for you as much as I do](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But [thanks {be}](#) to God, the one who put the same earnestness on your behalf into the [heart of Titus](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [We thank God](#) because he has caused [Titus to care for you as much as I do](#).

## 2 Corinthians 8:17

**For he not only accepted {our} appeal (ULT)  
When we asked him to help you, he agreed to  
do so (UST)**

Paul is referring to his asking Titus to return to Corinth and complete the collection. Alternate translation: "For he not only agreed to our request that he help you with the collection" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- he...accepted
- appeal

### Translation Words - UST

- we asked him to help you
- he agreed to do so

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For [he](#) not only [accepted](#) {our} [appeal](#), but being very eager, he has gone to you of his own accord.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When [we asked him to help you](#), [he agreed to do so](#). He was so eager to help you that he decided to visit you himself.

## 2 Corinthians 8:18

**with him (ULT)**

**Titus along with (UST)**

Alternate translation: "with Titus"

**the brother of whom is the praise...**

**throughout all of the churches (ULT)**

**another the Messiahian brother...praise him...**

**All the believers...the churches...because (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the brother whom believers among all of the churches praise" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- we have sent together
- brother
- praise
- of...churches
- gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- We have sent
- another...brother
- churches
- praise him
- he preaches the good news very well

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now we have sent together with him the brother of whom is the praise throughout all of the churches in the gospel,

### UST

<sup>18</sup> We have sent Titus along with another the Messiahian brother. All the believers in the churches praise him because he preaches the good news very well.

## 2 Corinthians 8:19

### not only {this (ULT)} to help us take to the believers there (UST)

Alternate translation: "not only do believers among all of the churches praise him"

### he also was chosen by the churches (ULT) The believers in the churches asked him...to help us take to the believers there (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the churches also selected him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### along with this act of grace which is being administered by us

This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to carry out this act of generosity"

### our...readiness (ULT) us to Jerusalem...to show everyone how much (UST)

Alternate translation: "our eagerness to help"

### Translation Words - ULT

- churches
- grace
- is being administered
- glory
- of...Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- The believers in the churches
- you and the others are giving to them
- contribute this money
- honor
- Lord

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> And not only {this}, but he also was chosen by the churches as our traveling companion, along with this grace which is being administered by us to the glory of the Lord, and {to show} our readiness;

### UST

<sup>19</sup> The believers in the churches asked him to go with us to Jerusalem to help us take to the believers there what you and the others are giving to them. We all want to contribute this money in order to honor the Lord and to show everyone how much we believers help each other.

## 2 Corinthians 8:20

**concerning this generosity in the administration by us (ULT)**

**We are doing everything we can...from...this money that you are giving so generously (UST)**

This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **administration**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “concerning the way we are handling this generous gift” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...administration](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are doing everything we can](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> avoiding this, {that} no one might blame us concerning this generosity in the [administration](#) by us.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> We [are doing everything we can](#) to keep anyone from asking why we are asking for this money that you are giving so generously.

## 2 Corinthians 8:21

**For we consider beforehand {what is} good (ULT)**

**We are careful to do all this in an honest and open way (UST)**

Alternate translation: "We are careful to handle this gift in an honorable way"

**before the Lord...before...men (ULT)**

**we know that...the Lord...sees us, too...We want everyone...we know that...sees us, too (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in the Lord's opinion ... in people's opinion"

### Translation Words - ULT

- what is} good
- the Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- all this in an honest and open way
- the Lord

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For we consider beforehand {what is} good, not only before the Lord, but also before men.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> We are careful to do all this in an honest and open way. We want everyone to know how we are doing this, and we know that the Lord sees us, too.

## 2 Corinthians 8:22

### with them (ULT) these brothers (UST)

The word **them** refers to Titus and the previously mentioned brother.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- we proved
- because of his...confidence

#### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- We have seen that
- he trusts

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now we sent our brother with them, whom we proved in many ways, {and} often being eager. But now he is even more eager {because of his} great confidence that {he has} in you.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> And with these brothers we are sending to you, we are adding still one more brother. We have seen that this brother does important work in a very faithful manner. He now desires even more to help you because he trusts you very much.



## 2 Corinthians 8:23

**he is} my partner and fellow worker for you (ULT)**

**he is my partner; he works alongside me... with (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he is my partner who works with me to help you"

**our brothers (ULT)**

**The other brothers...us to Jerusalem (UST)**

Here, **our brothers** refers to the two other men who will accompany Titus.

**they are} messengers of {the} churches (ULT)**

**it is the churches in our region who have chosen them to go (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the churches have sent them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a glory of Christ (ULT)**

**When other people see them, they will praise the Messiah very much because of them (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **glory**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "they will cause people to honor Christ" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Titus
- fellow worker
- brothers
- they are} messengers
- of {the} churches
- a glory
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Titus himself
- he works alongside me
- The other brothers
- it is the churches in our region
- who have chosen them to go
- When other people see them, they will praise
- the Messiah very much because of them

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As for Titus, {he is} my partner and fellow worker for you. As {for} our brothers, {they are} messengers of {the} churches, a glory of Christ.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> As for Titus himself, he is my partner; he works alongside me. The other brothers—it is the churches in our region who have chosen them to go with us to Jerusalem. When other people see them, they will praise the Messiah very much because of them.

## 2 Corinthians 8:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- the faces
- of...churches
- of...love
- boasting

### Translation Words - UST

- love them
- spoke so well
- churches
- how proud we are of you

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Therefore, prove to them to the faces of the churches the proof of your love and of our boasting about you.

8:7 <sup>[1]</sup> Some other versions read

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So show these brothers how you love them; show them why we spoke so well about you, and why we could not stop telling all the churches how proud we are of you.

## 2 Corinthians 9

### 2 Corinthians 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 9, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphors

Paul uses three agricultural metaphors. He uses them to teach about giving to needy believers. The metaphors help Paul explain that God will reward those who give generously. Paul does not say how or when God will reward them. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [reward, prize, deserve](#))

## 2 Corinthians 9:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues on the subject of giving. He wants to make sure that the collection of their offering for the needy believers in Jerusalem takes place before he comes so that it does not seem as though he takes advantage of them. He talks about how giving blesses the giver and glorifies God.

**the ministry that {is} to the saints (ULT)  
this collection of money for the believers in  
Jerusalem—all those people whom God has  
set apart for himself (UST)**

This refers to the collection of money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the ministry for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ministry](#)
- [saints](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [this collection of money](#)
- [for the believers in Jerusalem—all those people whom God has set apart for himself](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For concerning the [ministry](#) that {is} to the [saints](#), it is excessive for me to write to you.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now about [this collection of money for the believers in Jerusalem—all those people whom God has set apart for himself](#), I really do not need to write anything more to you.

## 2 Corinthians 9:2

### Achaia (ULT) you, and the other people of the province of Achaia (UST)

When Paul refers to **Achaia**, he is talking about a Roman province located in southern Greece where Corinth is located. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Achaia has been ready (ULT) you, and the other people of the province of Achaia, have been preparing for this collection (UST)

Here the word **Achaia** refers to the people who live in this province, and specifically to the people of the church in Corinth. Alternate translation: "the people of Achaia have been preparing" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- I boast
- to the Macedonians
- zeal

### Translation Words - UST

- I already know that
- I praised
- to the believers of Macedonia
- enthusiasm

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For I know your readiness, {of} which I boast to the Macedonians concerning you, that Achaia has been ready since last year, and your zeal stirred up most {of them}.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> I already know that you want to help, and I praised you for this to the believers of Macedonia. In fact, I told them that you, and the other people of the province of Achaia, have been preparing for this collection since last year. Your enthusiasm is an example that has moved the believers of Macedonia to take action.

## 2 Corinthians 9:3

### the brothers (ULT)

### the brothers ahead of me (UST)

Here, **the brothers** refers to Titus and the two men who accompany him.

### our boasting about you may not be futile

Paul does not want others to think that the things that he had boasted about the Corinthians were false.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I sent
- brothers
- boasting
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- I am sending
- brothers ahead of me
- did...praise
- as

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But I sent the brothers so that our boasting which {is} about you might not be futile in this matter, so that you might be ready, as I was saying.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> For I am sending the brothers ahead of me, so that when they meet you, they will see that we did not praise you for nothing; I also sent them ahead of me so that you would be ready to finish the work, as I promised others you would be.

## 2 Corinthians 9:4

**might find you unprepared (ULT)**  
**they might find that you are not ready to give**  
**all that you want to give (UST)**

Alternate translation: “find you unprepared to give”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Macedonians
- would be ashamed
- confidence

### Translation Words - UST

- I am afraid that some Macedonians
- will be ashamed that
- so well

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Otherwise, if Macedonians might come with me and might find you unprepared, we would be ashamed—not to mention you—by this confidence [1]

### UST

<sup>4</sup> I am afraid that some Macedonians might come with me when I come a little later, and that they might find that you are not ready to give all that you want to give. If that happens, we will be ashamed that we spoke so well about you—and you would be ashamed, too.

## 2 Corinthians 9:5

**the brothers that they should go to you  
beforehand (ULT)**

**the brothers to you, so they could...everything  
necessary to receive (UST)**

From Paul's perspective, **the brothers** are going. Alternate translation: "the brothers to come to you beforehand" (See: [Go and Come](#))

**not as something forced (ULT)  
rather than...a tax that we make you pay  
(UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "not as something that we forced you to give" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to urge](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [gift](#)
- [a blessing](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [something forced](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to make every effort to send](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [money](#)
- [this money will be something you freely offer](#) (2)
- [In...way](#)
- [a tax that we make you pay](#) (2)
- [a tax that we make you pay](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So I thought it necessary [to urge](#) the [brothers](#) that they should go to you beforehand and prepare in advance this promised [gift](#) of yours, to be ready in this way [as a blessing](#) and not [as something forced](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> I decided it was necessary [to make every effort to send](#) the [brothers](#) to you, so they could set in order everything necessary to receive the [money](#) you have promised to give. In this [way](#), [this money will be something you freely offer](#), rather than [a tax that we make you pay](#).



## 2 Corinthians 9:6

**the one who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and the one who sows in blessings will also reap in blessings (ULT)  
anyone who sows very little seed will also have a small crop to harvest, but anyone who sows a great amount of seed will gather a great harvest. Similarly, if you give just a little to help others, God will give you only a few blessings. But if you give willingly and cheerfully to help people, you will receive in return many blessings from God (UST)**

Paul uses the image of a farmer sowing seeds to describe the results of giving. As a farmer's harvest is based on how much he **sows**, so will God's **blessings** be little or much based on how generously the Corinthians give. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who sows](#)
- [who sows](#) (2)
- [will...reap](#)
- [will...reap](#) (2)
- [blessings](#)
- [blessings](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who sows](#)
- [who sows](#) (2)
- [will...have...to harvest](#)
- [will gather...Similarly, if you give just a little to help others, God will give you only](#) (2)
- [a great amount of seed...you will receive in return many blessings from God](#)
- [a great harvest...a few blessings. But if you give willingly and cheerfully to help people](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now this {I say}: the one [who sows](#) sparingly will also [reap](#) sparingly, and the one [who sows](#) in [blessings](#) will also [reap](#) in [blessings](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The point is, anyone [who sows](#) very little seed will also have a small crop [to harvest](#), but anyone [who sows](#) a great amount of seed will gather a great harvest. Similarly, if you give just a little to help others, God will give you only a few [blessings](#). But if you give [willingly and cheerfully to help people](#), you will receive in return many [blessings from God](#).

## 2 Corinthians 9:7

**just as he has decided beforehand in {his} heart (ULT)**

**decide in your heart how much money to give (UST)**

Here, **heart** refers to the thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: “just as he has determined” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**not from sorrow or from compulsion (ULT)**  
**so when you give it you will not regret doing it. You should not feel that anyone is forcing you to give (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind the words **sorrow** and **compulsion**, you could express the same idea with verbal forms. Alternate translation: “not because he feels guilty or because someone is compelling him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**for God loves a cheerful giver (ULT)**  
**because God loves a person who is happy to give (UST)**

God wants people to give gladly to help provide for fellow believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [in...heart](#)
- [God](#)
- [loves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [decide...how much money to give](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [God](#)
- [loves](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> {Let} each one {give} [just as](#) he has decided beforehand in {his} [heart](#), not from sorrow or from compulsion, for [God loves](#) a cheerful giver.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> First [decide in your heart how much money to give](#), so when you give it you will not regret doing it. You should not feel that anyone is forcing you to give, because [God loves](#) a person who is happy to give.

## 2 Corinthians 9:8

**And God is able to make all grace abound to you (ULT)**

**God can give you all kinds of gifts more and more...with (UST)**

Here, **grace** is spoken of as if it were a physical object of which a person can have more than he can use. As a person gives financially to other believers, **God** also gives to the giver everything he needs. Alternate translation: "God is able to give you more than you need" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**grace (ULT)**  
**of gifts (UST)**

Here, **grace** refers to the physical things a Christian needs, not to the need for God to save him from his sins.

**to...you may abound...every good work (ULT)**  
**and also enough...to...do good things with (UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that you may be able to do more and more good deeds"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to make...abound
- you may abound
- grace
- good
- work

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- of gifts
- more and more
- and also enough
- do good things
- do good things

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> And God is able to make all grace abound to you, so that in everything, always, having all sufficiency, you may abound in every good work.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> God can give you all kinds of gifts more and more, so that you will always have what you yourselves need, and also enough to do good things with.

## 2 Corinthians 9:9

### Just as it is written (ULT)

### As it is written in the scriptures (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "This is just as the writer wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [eternity](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As](#)
- [it is written in the scriptures](#)
- [He does these things forever](#)
- [He does these things forever](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [Just as it is written](#): "He distributed {alms}, he gave to the poor, his [righteousness](#) endures to [eternity](#)."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [As it is written in the scriptures](#): "He gives good things to people everywhere, and he gives to the poor what they need. [He does these things forever](#)."



## **2 Corinthians 9:10**

**the one...who supplies (ULT)  
God...gives (UST)**

Alternate translation: "God who supplies"

**bread for food (ULT)  
he gives bread to one who bakes it (UST)**

Here the word **bread** refers to **food** in general. Alternate translation: "food to eat" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will supply and multiply your seed (ULT)  
He will also supply...and increase what you are  
able to give away to others (UST)**

Paul speaks of the Corinthians' possessions as if they are seeds and of giving to others as if they were **sowing** seeds. Alternate translation: "will also supply and multiply your possessions so that you can sow them by giving them to others" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will increase the fruits of your righteousness (ULT)  
your seed...increase what you are able to give away to others (UST)**

Paul compares the benefits that the Corinthians will receive from their generosity to that of a harvest. Alternate translation: "God will bless you even more for your righteousness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your...the fruits of...righteousness (ULT)  
increase what you are able to give away to others (UST)**

Here, **righteousness** refers to the righteous actions of the Corinthians in giving their resources to the believers in Jerusalem.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [seed](#)
- [seed \(2\)](#)
- [to...sower](#)
- [bread](#)
- [multiply](#)
- [fruits](#)
- [of...righteousness](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [seed](#)
- [increase what you are able to give away to others \(2\)](#)
- [one who sows](#)
- [he gives bread](#)
- [increase what you are able to give away to others](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Now the one who supplies [seed](#) to the [sower](#) and [bread](#) for food will supply and [multiply](#) your [seed](#) and will increase the [fruits](#) of your [righteousness](#),

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> God gives [seed](#) to the [one who sows](#), and [he gives bread](#) to one who bakes it. He will also supply your seed and [increase what you are able to give away to others](#).

- increase what you are able to give away to others
- increase what you are able to give away to others



## 2 Corinthians 9:11

### enriching you (ULT)

### God will make you rich (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will enrich you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### which produces thanksgiving to God through us (ULT)

### As a result, many others will thank God for what they receive through the work that we apostles have done (UST)

The word **which** refers to the Corinthian's generosity. Alternate translation: "Because of your generosity, those who receive the gifts we bring them will thank God" or "and when we give your gifts to those who need them, they will give thanks to God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God

### Translation Words - UST

- God for what they receive

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> in every way enriching you for all generosity, which produces thanksgiving to God through us,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> God will make you rich in many ways, so that you can be generous. As a result, many others will thank God for what they receive through the work that we apostles have done.

## 2 Corinthians 9:12

### because the ministry of this service (ULT)

### We receive this money...that (UST)

Here, **service** refers to Paul and his companions bringing the contribution to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "For our carrying out this service for the believers in Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### but is also abounding with many

### thanksgivings to God (ULT)

### also do it so...many, many believers will thank God (UST)

Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers' act of service as if it were a liquid of which there is more than a container can hold. Alternate translation: "It also causes many deeds for which people will thank God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ministry](#)
- [of...service](#)
- [of...saints](#)
- [to God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We receive](#)
- [We receive](#)
- [our the Messianian brothers and sisters](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> because the [ministry](#) of this [service](#) not only is fully supplying the needs of the [saints](#), but is also abounding with many thanksgivings [to God](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [We receive](#) this money, not only to help [our the Messianian brothers and sisters](#) in need; we also do it so that many, many believers will thank [God](#).

## 2 Corinthians 9:13

### Because of the proof of this ministry (ULT) Because you began this task (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Because this service has tested and proven you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they glorify God for your obedience ... the generosity of your sharing with them and with everyone

Paul says that the Corinthians will **glorify God** both by being faithful to Jesus and by giving generously to other believers who have need.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of...ministry
- they are glorifying
- God
- of...obedience
- confession
- gospel
- of Christ
- of...fellowship

#### Translation Words - UST

- you began
- You honor
- God
- obeying him
- and believing what he says
- good news
- Messiah
- giving

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Because of the proof of this [ministry](#), [they are glorifying God](#) because of the [obedience](#) of your [confession](#) to the [gospel of Christ](#) and the generosity of the [fellowship](#) toward them and toward everyone,

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Because [you began](#) this task, you have shown what kind of people you are. [You honor God](#) by [obeying him and believing what he says](#) in the [good news](#) about the [Messiah](#). You also honor him by [giving](#) generously.

## 2 Corinthians 9:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- in...prayer
- grace
- of God

### Translation Words - UST

- will pray
- God
- has been kind

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> and in their prayer on your behalf, longing for you because of the surpassing grace of God upon you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> The ones to whom you will give will greatly desire to see you; they will pray for you, because of the wonderful way in which God has been kind to you.

## 2 Corinthians 9:15

**for his indescribable gift (ULT)  
for this gift from him—his gift is so great we  
cannot express it in words (UST)**

This **gift** could refer to: (1) “the very great grace” that God has given to the Corinthians, which has led them to be so generous. (2) Jesus Christ, whom God gave to all believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- gift

### Translation Words - UST

- to God
- gift

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Thanks {be} to God for his indescribable gift!  
9:4 <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>15</sup> We give thanks to God for this gift from him—his gift is so great we cannot express it in words.

## 2 Corinthians 10

### 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted words of verse 17.

In this chapter, Paul returns to defending his authority. He also compares the way he speaks and the way he writes.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Boasting

“Boasting” is often thought of as bragging, which is not good. But in this letter “boasting” means confidently exulting or rejoicing.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphor

In verses 3-6, Paul uses many metaphors from war. He probably uses them as part of a larger metaphor about Christians being spiritually at war. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Flesh

“Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for a person’s sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive (“in the flesh”), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: [flesh](#))

## 2 Corinthians 10:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul shifts the subject from giving to affirming his authority to teach as he does.

### by the meekness and gentleness of Christ (ULT)

### I am humble and gentle as I do...because the Messiah has made me that way (UST)

If your language does not use abstract noun for the ideas behind the word **meekness** and **gentleness**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: "I am humble and gentle as I do so, because Christ has made me that way" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- meek
- am bold
- appeal
- meekness
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- beg
- I am humble
- Messiah has made me that way
- I...was shy
- forceful when I am writing

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now I, Paul, myself who {am} meek {when} face to face among you, but being absent, am bold toward you, appeal to you by the meekness and gentleness of Christ.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now I, Paul, beg of you—and I am humble and gentle as I do so, because the Messiah has made me that way: I, who was shy when I was in front of you, but forceful when I am writing you a letter from far away:

## 2 Corinthians 10:2

### of those who regard us (ULT) who think that we work (UST)

Alternate translation: "who think of us"

### as walking according to the flesh (ULT) with human standards (UST)

Here, **flesh** is a metonym for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: "are acting from human motives" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- I will...need} to be bold
- with...confidence
- as
- walking
- the flesh

#### Translation Words - UST

- I will not have to be harsh with you
- I will not have to be harsh with you
- with
- human standards
- human standards

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now I am pleading that, being present, {I will} not {need} to be bold with the confidence with which I plan to be courageous against some of those who regard us as walking according to the flesh.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> I beg of you that, when I come, I will not have to be harsh with you. I am afraid, however, that I will have to be, in order to speak against the people who think that we work with human standards.



## 2 Corinthians 10:3

**in {the} flesh...walking (ULT)**  
**in our physical bodies...we now are living (UST)**

Here, **walking** is a metaphor for “living.” Alternate translation: “we live our lives in the flesh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in {the} flesh...walking (ULT)**  
**in our physical bodies...we now are living (UST)**

Here, **flesh** is a metonym for physical life. Alternate translation: “we live our lives in physical bodies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**not...we do...wage war (ULT)**  
**not...we do...fight using the same principles like armies do when they fight (UST)**

Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers as if he were fighting a physical **war**. These words should be translated literally. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we do not wage war according to {the} flesh (ULT)**  
**we do not fight using the same principles like armies do when they fight (UST)**

The word **flesh** is: (1) a metonym for physical life. Alternate translation: “fight against our enemies using physical weapons” (2) a metonym for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: “wage war in sinful ways” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [walking](#)
- [the} flesh](#)
- [to {the} flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we now are living](#)
- [our physical bodies](#)
- [we do...fight using the same principles like armies do when they fight](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For {though} [walking](#) in {[the](#)} [flesh](#), we do not wage war according to {[the](#)} [flesh](#).

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> For though [we now are living](#) in our [physical bodies](#), we do not [fight using the same principles like armies do when they fight](#).

## 2 Corinthians 10:4

**the...weapons of our warfare {are} not fleshly, but {are} powerful to God for {the} tearing down of strongholds {and for} tearing down strategies (ULT)**

**with...we are fighting...weapons, but these weapons are not designed by human beings, but by God. These weapons are powerful, so powerful that they can tear apart any false arguments (UST)**

Paul speaks of godly wisdom showing human wisdom to be false as if it were a weapon with which he was destroying an enemy stronghold. Alternate translation: "the weapons we fight with ... show people that what our enemies say is completely wrong" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**are} not fleshly (ULT)**

**but these weapons are not designed by human beings (UST)**

The word **fleshly** is: (1) a metonym for merely physical. Alternate translation: "are not physical" (2) a metonym for sinful human nature. Alternate translation: "are not sinful" or "do not enable us to do wrong" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [weapons](#)
- [fleshly](#)
- [are} powerful](#)
- [to God](#)
- [and for} tearing down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [weapons](#)
- [designed by human beings](#)
- [God](#)
- [These weapons are...powerful that they can tear apart any false arguments](#)
- [powerful](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For the [weapons](#) of our warfare {are} not [fleshly](#), but {are} [powerful to God](#) for {the} tearing down of strongholds {and for} [tearing down](#) strategies

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> And we are fighting with [weapons](#), but these weapons are not [designed by human beings](#), but by [God](#). These [weapons are powerful](#), so [powerful that they can tear apart any false arguments](#).



## **2 Corinthians 10:5**

**every high thing raising itself up (ULT)**  
**all those who rise up (UST)**

Paul is still speaking with the metaphor of a war, as if “the knowledge of God” were an army and **every high thing** were a wall that people had made to keep the army out. Alternate translation: “every false argument that proud people think of to protect themselves”

**every high thing (ULT)**  
**all those who rise up (UST)**

Alternate translation: “everything that proud people do”

**raising itself up against the knowledge of God (ULT)**  
**who rise up...against God. Those are the ones who try to keep people from knowing him (UST)**

Paul speaks of arguments as if they were a wall standing high against an army. The phrase **rises up** mean “stands tall,” not that the “high thing” is floating up into the air. Alternate translation: “people use so they will not have to know who God is” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we take every thought captive into the obedience of Christ (ULT)**  
**We keep and hold every thought that people have...God would work in those who did not obey him, and they will turn to him, and one day they will obey the Messiah (UST)**

Paul speaks of people’s thoughts as if they were enemy soldiers whom he captures in battle. Alternate translation: “we show how all the false ideas those people have are wrong and teach the people to obey Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [knowledge](#)
- [of God](#)
- [we take...captive](#)
- [obedience](#)
- [of Christ](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [knowing him](#)
- [We keep and hold](#)
- [they will obey](#)
- [Messiah](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> and every high thing raising itself up against the [knowledge of God](#), and [we take](#) every thought [captive](#) into the [obedience of Christ](#);

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> In this way we can tear apart every false argument and all those who rise up against [God](#). Those are the ones who try to keep people from [knowing him](#). [We keep and hold](#) every thought that people have and we take those thoughts as our prisoners. God would work in those who did not obey him, and they will turn to him, and one day [they will obey](#) the [Messiah](#).

## 2 Corinthians 10:6

**to avenge every act of disobedience (ULT)  
to punish any who remain disobedient to him (UST)**

Here, **act of disobedience** is a metonym for the people who commit those acts. Alternate translation: “punish every one of you who disobey us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to avenge
- act of disobedience
- obedience
- would be complete

### Translation Words - UST

- completely
- obey the Messiah
- to punish
- remain disobedient to him

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and being in readiness to avenge every act of disobedience, when your obedience would be complete.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When you completely obey the Messiah yourselves, we will be ready to punish any who remain disobedient to him.

## 2 Corinthians 10:7

**You are looking at the {things} according to appearance (ULT)**

**You should look at the clear facts (UST)**

This could be: (1) a command. (2) a statement. Alternate translation: "You are looking only at what you can see with your eyes." Some think this is a rhetorical question that may also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Are you looking at what is clearly in front of you?" or "You seem unable to see what is clearly in front of you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**let him consider this again concerning himself (ULT)**

**to recognize that...they should recognize (UST)**

Alternate translation: "he needs to remember"

**of Christ...just as he...so also {are} we (ULT)**

**to the Messiah...remind him...just as he belongs...that so do we (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we belong to Christ just as much as he does"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Christ
- is} of Christ (2)
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- to the Messiah
- to the Messiah (2)
- remind him...just as

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You are looking at the {things} according to appearance. If anyone is convinced in himself {that} he is of Christ, let him consider this again concerning himself: that just as he {is} of Christ, so also {are} we.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> You should look at the clear facts. If anyone has faith to recognize that he belongs to the Messiah, remind him that just as he belongs to the Messiah, they should recognize that so do we!

## 2 Corinthians 10:8

**for building up and not for your tearing down (ULT)**

**not to destroy you, but to help you and make you strong (UST)**

Paul speaks of helping the Corinthians to know Christ better as if he were constructing a building. Alternate translation: “to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I might boast](#)
- [authority](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [I will...be ashamed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I praised myself](#)
- [authority as apostles...for you](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [So I am...ashamed of the authority the Lord gave me](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For even if [I might boast](#) somewhat excessively about our [authority](#), which the [Lord](#) gave for building up and not for your tearing down, [I will not be ashamed](#),

### UST

<sup>8</sup> When [I praised myself](#) about our [authority as apostles](#), that may have been too much [for you](#). But the [Lord](#) gave that authority to me not to destroy you, but to help you and make you strong. [So I am not ashamed of the authority the Lord gave me](#).



## 2 Corinthians 10:9

**to terrify you (ULT)**

**I do not want...you...to be afraid (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I am trying to frighten you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- as if
- letters

### Translation Words - UST

- my letters...you read them
- I do not want...to be afraid

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> so that I would not seem as if to terrify you through {my} letters.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Though my letters seem strong when you read them, I do not want you to be afraid when you read them. That is not why I have written them to you.

## 2 Corinthians 10:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- letters
- forceful
- bodily

### Translation Words - UST

- We should take his letters seriously
- they say powerful things
- he is physically

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Indeed, {someone} says, “{His} letters {are} weighty and forceful, but {his} bodily presence {is} weak, and {his} speech is despised.”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Some people who know me and read my letters say, “We should take his letters seriously because they say powerful things, but when Paul is with us, he is physically weak and he is not worth listening to.”

## 2 Corinthians 10:11

**Let such {a person} consider this (ULT)**

**Let those who criticize me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I want such people to be aware"

**what we are in the words of our letters when  
we are absent is what we will be in our  
actions when we are there**

Alternate translation: "we will do the same things when we are there with you that we have written about in our letters while we have been away from you"

**we are (ULT)**

**we write to you in our letters (UST)**

Here, **we** refers to Paul's ministry team but not to the Corinthians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [letters](#)
- [in...deed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we write to you in our letters](#)
- [we do](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Let such {a person} consider this, that such as we are in {our} word through [letters](#) being absent, such {we are} also in {our} [deed](#) being present.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Let those who criticize me know that what [we write to you in our letters](#) when we are absent are the very things [we do](#) when we are with you.

## 2 Corinthians 10:12

**to classify or compare ourselves with some (ULT)**

**to compare ourselves with those (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to say we are as good as some”

**these—who measure themselves by themselves, and compare themselves with themselves (ULT)**

**they compare themselves to one another, it proves only that (UST)**

Both of these clauses mean essentially the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**these—who measure themselves by themselves (ULT)**

**they compare themselves to one another (UST)**

Paul is speaking of goodness as though it were something whose length people could **measure**. Alternate translation: “they look at each other and try to see who is better” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**not...do...understand (ULT)**

**not...they are foolish (UST)**

Alternate translation: “show everyone that they do not know anything”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [do...understand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they are foolish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For we do not dare to classify or compare ourselves with some of those who commend themselves. But these—who measure themselves by themselves, and compare themselves with themselves—do not [understand](#).

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> We will not even try to compare ourselves with those who praise themselves. When they compare themselves to one another, it proves only that [they are foolish](#).

## 2 Corinthians 10:13

### General Information:

Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules, those things over which he has authority as being within the borders or “limits” of his land, and those things not under his authority as being beyond the “limits.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will not boast about the immeasurable things (ULT)**

**will praise ourselves...we will work only as he has told us to work; our work (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will not boast about things over which we have no authority” or “will boast only about things over which we have authority” (See: [Idiom](#))

**according to the measure of the limit that God has assigned to us (ULT)  
only about what God has given us to do (UST)**

Alternate translation: “about things under the authority that God has given us to do”

**a measure {that} reached even as far as you (ULT)  
includes you also (UST)**

Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules. Alternate translation: “and you are within the border of our authority” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will...boast
- God
- has assigned

### Translation Words - UST

- will praise ourselves
- God
- has given...to do

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> We, however, will not **boast** about the immeasurable things, but according to the measure of the limit that **God has assigned** to us, a measure {that} reached even as far as you.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> We **will praise ourselves** only about what **God has given us to do**. And we will work only as he has told us to work; our work, however, includes you also.

## 2 Corinthians 10:14

**not...we are...overextending ourselves (ULT)**  
**When we reached out...we did not go beyond where God assigned us to work (UST)**

Alternate translation: "we did not go beyond our borders"

### Translation Words - ULT

- as though
- gospel
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- When we reached out
- good news
- about the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For we are not overextending ourselves, **as though** we did not reach to you, for we came even as far as you with the **gospel of Christ**.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> **When we reached out** to you, we did not go beyond where God assigned us to work. He assigned your region to us, and we were the first to tell you the **good news about the Messiah**.

## 2 Corinthians 10:15

### Neither do we boast beyond {our} limits (ULT) We are not boasting (UST)

This is an idiom. See how similar words were translated in [2 Corinthians 10:13](#). Alternate translation: “And we have not boasted about things over which we have no authority” or “We have not boasted only about things over which we have authority” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- do we boast
- the} labors
- hope {for
- faith

#### Translation Words - UST

- We are...boasting
- the work
- we hope that
- you will trust God

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Neither do we boast beyond {our} limits in {the} labors of others, but having hope {for} your faith, being caused to increase according to our limit among you, to be enlarged to abundance

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> We are not boasting about the work God gave to others, as if we had done that work. Instead, we hope that you will trust God more and more, and that in the same way, God will assign us a larger region to work in.

## 2 Corinthians 10:16

**another's area (ULT)  
take credit for work that any other servants  
of God are doing, in their own regions where  
they serve him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "an area that God has assigned to someone else"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to preach the gospel
- to boast

### Translation Words - UST

- in order that we may share the good news
- take credit for work that any other servants of God are doing, in their own regions where they serve him

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> to preach the gospel in the {places} beyond you—not to boast in the {things} accomplished in another's area.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> We hope for this, in order that we may share the good news with people beyond where you live. We will not take credit for work that any other servants of God are doing, in their own regions where they serve him.



## 2 Corinthians 10:17

**let...boast in the Lord (ULT)**

**be proud of the Lord (UST)**

Alternate translation: "let ... boast about what the Lord has done"

### Translation Words - ULT

- boasting
- let...boast
- in the Lord
- the Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- who is proud
- be proud
- of the Lord
- the Lord

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> "But let the one boasting, boast in the Lord."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> The scriptures say, "Let the one who is proud, be proud of the Lord."

## 2 Corinthians 10:18

**who commends himself (ULT)**  
**a person praises himself for what he has done (UST)**

This means that he provides enough evidence for each person who hears him to decide whether he is right or wrong. See how “recommend ourselves” is translated in [2 Corinthians 4:2](#).

**not...is...approved (ULT)**  
**not...he approves (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “is not whom the Lord approves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**whom the Lord commends (ULT)**  
**the Lord does...reward him for doing that...he rewards those whom (UST)**

You can make explicit the understood information. Alternate translation: “the one whom the Lord recommends is the one of whom the Lord approves” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For that one who commends himself is not approved, but whom the [Lord](#) commends.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> When a person praises himself for what he has done, [the Lord](#) does not reward him for doing that. Instead, he rewards those whom he approves.

## 2 Corinthians 11

### 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Paul continues defending his authority.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### False teaching

The Corinthians were quick to accept false teachers. They taught things about Jesus and the gospel that were different and not true. Unlike these false teachers, Paul sacrificially served the Corinthians. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#))

##### Light

Light is commonly used in the New Testament as a metaphor. Paul here uses light to indicate the revealing of God and his righteousness. Darkness describes sin. Sin seeks to remain hidden from God. (See: [light](#), [luminary](#), [shine](#), [brighten](#), [enlighten](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [darkness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphor

Paul begins this chapter with an extended metaphor. He compares himself to the father of a bride who is giving a pure, virgin bride to her bridegroom. Wedding practices change depending on the cultural background. But the idea of helping to present someone as a grown and holy child is explicitly pictured in this passage. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

##### Irony

This chapter is full of irony. Paul is hoping to shame the Corinthian believers with his irony.

“You tolerate these things well enough!” Paul thinks that they should not tolerate the way the false apostles treated them. Paul does not think they are really apostles at all.

The statement, “For you gladly put up with fools. You are wise yourselves!” means that the Corinthian believers think they were very wise but Paul does not agree.

“I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that.” Paul is speaking about behavior he thinks is very wrong in order to avoid it. He is speaking as if he thinks he is wrong for not doing it. He uses a rhetorical question also as irony. “Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted?” (See: [Irony](#) and [apostle](#), [apostleship](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Rhetorical questions

In refuting the false apostles claiming to be superior, Paul uses a series of rhetorical questions. Each question is coupled with an answer: "Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I. Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were out of my mind.) I am more."

He also uses a series of rhetorical questions to empathize with his converts: "Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who has caused another to fall into sin, and I do not burn within?"

### "Are they servants of Christ?"

This is sarcasm, a special type of irony used to mock or insult. Paul does not believe these false teachers actually serve Christ, only that they pretend to do so.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Paradox

A "paradox" is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. This sentence in verse 30 is a paradox: "If I must boast, I will boast about what shows my weaknesses." Paul does not explain why he would boast in his weakness until 2 Corinthians 12:9. ([2 Corinthians 11:30](#))

## 2 Corinthians 11:1

**you would bear with me in a little bit of foolishness (ULT)**

**It is foolish for a person to praise himself... allow me to continue a little (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you would allow me allow me to act like a fool"

### Translation Words - ULT

- you would bear with
- you are...bearing with
- of foolishness

### Translation Words - UST

- It is foolish for a person to praise himself
- allow me to continue a little
- that is what I am doing

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> I wish that you would bear with me in a little bit of foolishness, but you are indeed bearing with me!

### UST

<sup>1</sup> It is foolish for a person to praise himself, but that is what I am doing. Please allow me to continue a little.

## 2 Corinthians 11:2

**I am jealous...for} you with a godly jealousy (ULT)**

**I want to guard...carefully...you...I want to guard you the way God himself would guard you (UST)**

These words speak of a good, strong desire that the Corinthians be faithful to Christ, and that no one should persuade them to leave him.

**for I joined you to one husband, to present {you} {as} a pure virgin to Christ (ULT)**

**I am like a father who promised you in marriage to only one husband and who wants to be the one who presents you, as a pure virgin bride, to the Messiah (UST)**

Paul speaks of his care for the Corinthian believers as if he had **promised** another man that he would prepare his daughter to marry him and he is most concerned that he be able to keep his promise to the man. Alternate translation: "for I was like a father who promised to present his daughter to one husband. I promised to keep you as a pure virgin so I could give you to Christ" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For I am jealous {for} you with a godly jealousy, for I joined you to one husband, to present {you} {as} a pure virgin to Christ.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> For I want to guard you carefully. I want to guard you the way God himself would guard you. I am like a father who promised you in marriage to only one husband and who wants to be the one who presents you, as a pure virgin bride, to the Messiah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am jealous
- with a...jealousy
- godly
- as} a...virgin
- pure
- to Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- I want to guard...carefully
- I want to guard you the way...would guard you
- God himself
- pure
- a...virgin bride
- Messiah

## 2 Corinthians 11:3

### But I am afraid that somehow ... the sincerity and the purity that are in Christ

Alternate translation: "But I am afraid that somehow your thoughts might be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ just as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness"

### your minds might be corrupted (ULT) I am afraid...someone has convinced...you (UST)

Paul speaks of **thoughts** as if they were animals that people could lead along the wrong path. Alternate translation: "someone might cause you to believe lies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- I am afraid
- as
- serpent
- deceived
- Eve
- minds
- might be corrupted
- Christ

#### Translation Words - UST

- I have become afraid that someone has...you
- Messiah
- like the devil tricked
- like the devil tricked
- like the devil tricked
- Eve
- I am afraid...someone has convinced
- I am afraid...someone has convinced

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, your minds might be corrupted from the sincerity and the purity that {are} in Christ.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But as I think about you, I have become afraid that someone has tricked you, like the devil tricked Eve. I am afraid that someone has convinced you to stop loving the Messiah with an honest heart.

## 2 Corinthians 11:4

**For if indeed one coming (ULT)  
I say this because...if someone else comes and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "When anyone comes and"

**or you receive a different spirit which you did not receive, or you receive a different gospel which you did not accept**

Alternate translation: "a different spirit than the Holy Spirit, or a different gospel than you received from us"

**you are bearing with {it} well (ULT)  
you do...seem to mind (UST)**

See how these words were translated in [2 Corinthians 11:1](#). Alternate translation: "you are dealing correctly with these things"

### Translation Words - ULT

- proclaims
- we did...proclaim
- Jesus
- you are bearing with {it}
- you receive
- you did...receive
- you did...accept
- a...spirit
- a...gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- or if he wants you to receive
- or a different kind of good news
- you do...seem to mind
- you do...seem to mind
- or a different kind of good news
- tells you
- than what we told you
- about Jesus
- a...spirit from the Spirit of God

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For if indeed one coming proclaims another Jesus whom we did not proclaim, or you receive a different spirit which you did not receive or a different gospel which you did not accept, you are bearing with {it} well!

### UST

<sup>4</sup> I say this because you do not seem to mind if someone else comes and tells you different things about Jesus than what we told you, or if he wants you to receive a different spirit from the Spirit of God, or a different kind of good news.



## 2 Corinthians 11:5

### of the “super-apostles (ULT) People call those teachers “super-apostles (UST)

Paul uses irony here to show that those teachers are less important than people say there are. Alternate translation: “those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else” (See: [Irony](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...apostles](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For I consider {myself} not to fall short of the “super-[apostles](#).”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> People call those teachers “super-[apostles](#),” but I do not think they are greater than I am.

## 2 Corinthians 11:6

### not in {this} knowledge (ULT)

#### I certainly know many things about God (UST)

This negative phrase emphasizes the positive truth that he is trained in knowledge. Alternate translation: "I am certainly trained in knowledge" (See: [Litotes](#))

### not in {this} knowledge (ULT)

#### I certainly know many things about God (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **knowledge**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "I am trained to know what they know" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...knowledge](#)
- [having made {this} clear](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I...know many things about God](#)
- [you learned when I spoke](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But even if I am untrained in {this} speech, yet not in {this} [knowledge](#), but in everything [having made {this} clear](#) to you in all things.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> It may be true that I never studied how to give wonderful speeches, but I certainly [know many things about God](#), as [you learned when I spoke](#) to you.

## 2 Corinthians 11:7

**Or did I commit a sin, humbling myself so that you too might be exalted, because I preached the gospel of God to you without payment (ULT)**

**Was I wrong to serve you as a humble person in such a way that others praised you instead of me? Was I wrong to preach the good news to you without charging any money (UST)**

Paul is beginning to claim that he treated the Corinthians well. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I think we agree that I did not sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Or did I commit a [sin](#), [humbling](#) myself so that you too [might be exalted](#), because I [preached](#) the [gospel of God](#) to you [without payment](#)?

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [Was I wrong](#) to serve you [as a humble person](#) in such a way that [others praised](#) you [instead of me](#)? Was I wrong [to preach](#) the [good news](#) to you [without charging any money](#)?

**I preached the gospel of God to you without payment (ULT)  
to preach the good news to you without charging any money (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I preached the gospel of God to you without expecting anything from you in return"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a sin](#)
- [humbling](#)
- [you...might be exalted](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [I preached](#)
- [of God](#)
- [without payment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Was I wrong](#)
- [as a humble person](#)
- [others praised...instead of me](#)
- [good news](#)
- [to preach](#)
- [good news](#)
- [without charging any money](#)

## 2 Corinthians 11:8

**I robbed other churches (ULT)  
Yes, I allowed believers in other churches  
(UST)**

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul received money from **churches** who were not obligated to give to him. Alternate translation: "I accepted money from other churches" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the ministry {to} you (ULT)  
I could serve you. Maybe you will say that I  
was robbing them. But I asked you for  
nothing (UST)**

The full meaning of this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I could serve you at no cost" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [churches](#)
- [having accepted](#)
- [ministry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [churches](#)
- [to give me money](#)
- [I could serve](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I robbed other [churches](#), [having accepted](#) a wage for the [ministry](#) {to} you.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Yes, I allowed believers in other [churches to give me money](#) so [I could serve](#) you. Maybe you will say that I was robbing them. But I asked you for nothing.

## 2 Corinthians 11:9

**the brothers who came (ULT)**

**The brothers who came (UST)**

These **brothers** were probably all male.

**in everything, I kept and will {continue to} keep myself {from being} a burden to you (ULT)**

**I have done everything I could for you not to be in hardship because of me, and this I will continue to do (UST)**

Paul speaks of someone for whom one has to spend money as if they were heavy items that people have to carry. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in everything, I kept and will {continue to} keep myself {from being} a burden to you (ULT)**

**I have done everything I could for you not to be in hardship because of me, and this I will continue to do (UST)**

The full meaning of this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I have done all I can to make sure you do not have to spend money so that I can be with you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**myself {from being} a burden...And...I kept...will {continue to} keep (ULT)**  
**I could...not to be in hardship because of me...There was a time...and this I will continue to do (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I never will be a burden to you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I did...burden](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Macedonia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I did...ask](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Macedonia](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And being present with you—and having lacked—I [did not burden](#) anyone. For the [brothers](#) who came from [Macedonia](#) completely met my need, and in everything, I kept and will {continue to} keep myself {from being} a burden to you.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> There was a time when I was with you that I needed many things, but [I did not ask](#) you for any money at all. The [brothers](#) who came from [Macedonia](#) provided all I needed, instead. I have done everything I could for you not to be in hardship because of me, and this I will continue to do.

## 2 Corinthians 11:10

**The} truth of Christ is in me (ULT)  
I am telling the complete truth about the  
Messiah and how I have worked (UST)**

Paul is emphasizing that because his readers know that he tells the **truth** about **Christ**, they can know that he is telling the truth here. "As surely as you know that I truly know and proclaim the truth about Christ, you can know that what I am about to say is true"

**this boasting about myself will not be stopped (ULT)  
So I will continue to let everyone in...know  
about this (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one will be able to make me stop boasting and stay silent" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**this boasting...about myself (ULT)  
So I will continue to let everyone...know about this...in (UST)**

This refers to what Paul spoke about starting in ([2 Corinthians 11:7](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The} truth](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [boasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [telling the complete truth](#)
- [about the Messiah](#)
- [So I will continue to let everyone...know about this](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [{The} truth of Christ](#) is in me, so that this [boasting](#) about myself will not be stopped in the regions of Achaia.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> I am [telling the complete truth about the Messiah](#) and how I have worked for him. [So I will continue to let everyone](#) in all the region of Achaia [know about this](#).

## 2 Corinthians 11:11

**Why? Because I do not love you (ULT)**  
**Certainly you do not think that I refused your money because I did not love you. Far from it (UST)**

Paul uses rhetorical questions to emphasize love for the Corinthians. These questions can be combined or made into a statement. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can combine them or express them as statements. Alternate translation: "Is it because I do not love you that I do not want to be a burden to you?" or "I will continue to keep you from paying for my needs because this shows others that I love you" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**God knows {I do (ULT)}**  
**God knows I love you (UST)**

You can make explicit the understood information. Alternate translation: "God knows I love you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I do...love
- God
- knows {I do

### Translation Words - UST

- I did...love you. Far from it
- God
- knows I love you

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Why? Because I do not love you? God knows {I do}!

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> Certainly you do not think that I refused your money because I did not love you. Far from it! God knows I love you.

## 2 Corinthians 11:12

**so that I may cut off the opportunity of those who desire an opportunity, so that in what they are boasting about they may be found just as we also {are (ULT) in this same way, so that I stop those who say that they are equal to us. They will have no excuse to offer for how they boast (UST)**

Paul speaks of a false claim that his enemies state as if it were something that he can carry away. Alternate translation: “so that I might make it impossible for those who are trying to get people to regard them as highly as they respect us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they...may be found (ULT)**

**They will have no excuse to offer...how they boast (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people will think highly of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I may cut off
- are boasting about they
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- I stop
- they are equal
- They will have no excuse to offer...how they boast

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> And what I do I will also {continue to} do so that I may cut off the opportunity of those who desire an opportunity, so that in what they are boasting about they may be found just as we also {are}.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> I will continue to serve you in this same way, so that I stop those who say that they are equal to us. They will have no excuse to offer for how they boast.



## 2 Corinthians 11:13

**For {men} of such kind (ULT)**

**Such people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I do what I do because people like them"

**deceitful workers (ULT)**

**They are workers who always tell lies, and (UST)**

Alternate translation: "dishonest workers"

**disguising themselves {as} apostles (ULT)**

**they are pretending to be apostles (UST)**

Alternate translation: "are not apostles, but they try to make themselves look like apostles"

### Translation Words - ULT

- workers
- apostles
- of Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- They are workers
- apostles
- of the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For {men} of such kind {are} false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves {as} apostles of Christ.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Such people are false apostles claiming that God has sent them. They are workers who always tell lies, and they are pretending to be apostles of the Messiah.

## 2 Corinthians 11:14

### no wonder (ULT)

### They should...not...surprise us (UST)

By stating this in a negative form Paul is emphasizing that the Corinthians should expect to meet many “false apostles” (2 Corinthians 11:13). Alternate translation: “we should expect this” (See: [Litotes](#))

### himself...Satan...disguises himself {as} an angel of light (ULT)

### Even...Satan pretends to be an angel shining with the light of God’s presence (UST)

Alternate translation: “Satan is not an angel of light, but he tries to make himself look like an angel of light”

### an angel of light (ULT)

### to be an angel...shining with the light of God’s presence (UST)

Here, **light** is a metaphor for righteousness. Alternate translation: “an angel of righteousness” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Satan
- an angel
- of light

### Translation Words - UST

- Satan
- to be an angel
- shining with the light of God's presence

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And no wonder, for Satan himself disguises himself {as} an angel of light.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> They should not surprise us. Even Satan pretends to be an angel shining with the light of God's presence.

## 2 Corinthians 11:15

### it is} no great thing...if (ULT) servants also...servants also (UST)

By stating this in a negative form Paul is emphasizing that the Corinthians should expect to meet many “false apostles” (2 Corinthians 11:13). Alternate translation: “we should certainly expect to see” (See: [Litotes](#))

### his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness

Alternate translation: “his servants are not servants of righteousness, but they try to make themselves look like servants of righteousness”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servants](#)
- [servants \(2\)](#)
- [as](#)
- [of righteousness](#)
- [works](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [servants also](#)
- [to serve \(2\)](#)
- [to serve](#)
- [God; they pretend to be good](#)
- [they deserve](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Therefore, {it is} no great thing if his [servants](#) also disguise themselves [as servants of righteousness](#), whose end will be according to their [works](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> His [servants also](#) pretend to serve God; they pretend to be good. God will punish them as [they deserve](#).

## 2 Corinthians 11:16

**me...foolish...receive...at least as...so that I too may boast a little bit (ULT)**

**No one should think...a fool...you really do... think of...me...as...a fool...then I will go ahead and continue to praise...a little more (UST)**

Alternate translation: "receive me as you would receive a fool: let me talk, and consider my boasting the words of a fool"

### Translation Words - ULT

- foolish
- a fool (2)
- receive
- as
- may boast

### Translation Words - UST

- a fool
- a fool (2)
- as
- a fool
- will go ahead and continue to praise

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I say again: Let no one think me to be foolish. But if not, receive me at least as a fool so that I too may boast a little bit.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> No one should think I am a fool. But if you really do think of me as a fool, then I will go ahead and continue to praise myself a little more.

## 2 Corinthians 11:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- as
- foolishness
- confidence
- of...boasting

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- it is simply me speaking like a fool
- it is simply me speaking like a fool
- it is simply me speaking like a fool
- it is simply me speaking like a fool

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> What I am saying, I am not saying according to **the Lord**, but **as** in **foolishness**, in this **confidence** of {my} **boasting**.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When I speak in this way, this is not the way **the Lord** speaks of me; **it is simply me speaking like a fool**.

## 2 Corinthians 11:18

### according to the flesh (ULT) about who they are in this life (UST)

Here the metonym **flesh** refers to man in his sinful nature and his achievements. Alternate translation: "about their own human achievements" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [boast](#)
- [will boast](#)
- [the flesh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [have been proud](#)
- [can be that way, too](#)
- [who they are in this life](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Since many [boast](#) according to the [flesh](#), I too [will boast](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Many [have been proud](#) about [who they are in this life](#). Well, I [can be that way, too](#).

## 2 Corinthians 11:19

**you bear with the foolish (ULT)**

**You will...put up with my foolishness (UST)**

See how a similar phrase was translated in [2 Corinthians 11:1](#).  
Alternate translation: "you ... accept me when I act like a fool"

**being wise (ULT)**

**since you are so wise yourselves (UST)**

Paul is shaming the Corinthians by using irony. Alternate translation: "thinking that you are wise, even though you are not" (See: [Irony](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you bear with
- foolish
- wise

### Translation Words - UST

- You will...put up with
- my foolishness
- since you are so wise yourselves

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> For gladly you bear with the foolish, being wise.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> You will certainly gladly put up with my foolishness, since you are so wise yourselves!

## 2 Corinthians 11:20

**if anyone enslaves you, if anyone devours you (ULT)**

**I say this because...leaders who treated you like slaves; you followed those who created divisions among you (UST)**

Paul is using exaggeration when he speaks of some people forcing others to obey rules as if they were forcing them to be slaves or devouring them. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**enslaves you (ULT)**  
**who treated you like slaves (UST)**

Paul speaks of people forcing others to obey rules as if they were forcing them to be slaves. Alternate translation: "makes you follow rules they have thought of" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**devours you (ULT)**  
**you followed those who created divisions among you (UST)**

Paul speaks of the super-apostles' taking people's material resources as if they were eating the people themselves. Alternate translation: "takes all your property" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**takes advantage {of you (ULT)}**  
**you let your leaders take advantage of you (UST)**

A person **takes advantage of** another person by knowing things that the other person does not and using that knowledge to help himself and harm the other person.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you bear with {it](#)
- [enslaves](#)
- [devours you](#)
- [exalts {himself](#)
- [the} face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you have tolerated](#)
- [who treated...like slaves](#)
- [you followed those who created divisions among you](#)
- [you permitted your leaders to imagine themselves to be better than others](#)
- [in the face](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For [you bear with {it}](#) if anyone [enslaves](#) you, if anyone [devours you](#), if anyone takes advantage {of you}, if anyone [exalts {himself}](#), if anyone hits you in [{the} face](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> I say this because [you have tolerated](#) leaders [who treated you like slaves](#); [you followed those who created divisions among you](#); you let your leaders take advantage of you; [you permitted your leaders to imagine themselves to be better than others](#); and you permit them to slap you [in the face](#) but you do nothing about it. Such a thing is really not at all wise!



## 2 Corinthians 11:21

**According to dishonor, as {for that} I say that we ourselves have been weak (ULT)  
I'm ashamed to admit it, but Timothy and I don't have the strength to do those things to you...like (UST)**

Paul is using irony to tell the Corinthians that it was not because he was **weak** that he treated them well. Alternate translation: "I am not ashamed to say that we had the power to harm you, but we treated you well" (See: [Irony](#))

**in whatever {way...anyone might be bold...I too am bold (ULT)**

**Whatever other people dare to brag about...**

**Whatever other people dare to brag about...I...a fool, can also brag about (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in whatever anyone boasts about ... I will dare to boast about it also"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [dishonor](#)
- [as {for that}](#)
- [foolishness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I'm ashamed](#)
- [but Timothy and I](#)
- [Whatever other people dare to brag about](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> According to [dishonor, as {for that}](#) I say that we ourselves have been weak! However, in whatever {way} anyone might be bold—I am speaking in [foolishness](#)—I too am bold.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [I'm ashamed](#) to admit it, [but Timothy and I](#) don't have the strength to do those things to you. [Whatever other people dare to brag about](#), I, like a fool, can also brag about.

## 2 Corinthians 11:22

### Are they Hebrews? ... Are they Israelites? ... Are they descendants of Abraham?

Paul is asking and answering questions the Corinthians might be asking to emphasize that he is as much a Jew as the super-apostles are. You should keep the question-and-answer form if possible. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "They want you to think they are important and to believe what they say because they are Hebrews and Israelites and descendants of Abraham. Well, so am I!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrews](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [offspring](#)
- [of Abraham](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [claim to be upright Hebrews](#)
- [claim to be Israelites](#)
- [claim to be...of Abraham](#)
- [descendants](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Are they [Hebrews](#)? I {am} also. Are they [Israelites](#)? I {am} also. Are they [offspring of Abraham](#)? I {am} also.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Those people [claim to be upright Hebrews](#). So am I. They [claim to be Israelites](#). So am I. They [claim to be descendants of Abraham](#). So am I.



## **2 Corinthians 11:23**

**Are they servants of Christ? (I speak {as} being insane.) I {am} more so (ULT)**  
**Are they servants of the Messiah?—I speak like a man who is out of his mind! I (UST)**

Paul continues asking and answering questions the Corinthians might be asking to emphasize that he is as much a Jew as the super-apostles are. You should keep the question-and-answer form if possible. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "They say they are servants of Christ—I speak as though I were out of my mind—but I am more" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**I speak {as} being insane (ULT)**  
**I speak like a man who is out of his mind (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I speak as though I were unable to think well"

**I {am} more so (ULT)**  
**I speak...I (UST)**

You can make explicit the understood information. Alternate translation: "I am more a servant of Christ than they are" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**more abundantly in hard work (ULT)**  
**worked harder than any of them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I have worked harder"

**more abundantly in...imprisonments (ULT)**  
**harder than any of them...prisons than they; I have had (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I have been in prisons more often"

**in beatings beyond measure (ULT)**  
**more severe beatings than they (UST)**

Here, **beyond measure** is an idiom that means he had been beaten many, many times. Alternate translation: "I have been beaten very many times" (See: [Idiom](#))

**in beatings beyond measure (ULT)**  
**more severe beatings than they (UST)**

This is exaggerated to emphasize that he had been beaten many, many times. Alternate translation: "I have been beaten too many times to bother counting" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> Are they [servants of Christ?](#) (I speak {as} being insane.) I {am} more so: more abundantly in [hard work](#), more abundantly in [imprisonments](#), in beatings beyond measure, often in [{danger of} deaths](#).

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Are they [servants of the Messiah?](#)—I speak like a man who is out of his mind! I [worked](#) harder than any of them; I have been in more [prisons than they](#); I [have had](#) more severe beatings than they, and I [have faced death](#) more times than they have.

**in...often...danger of} deaths (ULT)**  
**any of them...I have faced death more times than they have (UST)**

Alternate translation: "and I have almost died many times"

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- servants
- of Christ
- hard work
- imprisonments
- danger of} deaths

### **Translation Words - UST**

- servants
- of the Messiah
- worked
- prisons than they; I have had
- I have faced death

## 2 Corinthians 11:24

### 40 {lashes} minus one (ULT) with the thirty-nine lashes (UST)

This was a common expression for being whipped 39 times. In Jewish law the most they were allowed to whip a person at one time was forty lashes. So they commonly whipped a person thirty-nine times so that they would be guilty of whipping someone too many times if the accidentally counted wrong.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- I received
- Jews

#### Translation Words - UST

- the Jews
- punished me

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Five times I received from Jews 40 {lashes} minus one.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Five times the Jews punished me with the thirty-nine lashes, beating me each time until I nearly died.

## 2 Corinthians 11:25

### I was beaten with rods (ULT)

### I was beaten by my captors with wooden rods (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people beat me with wooden rods" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### I was stoned (ULT)

### they threw stones at me to kill me (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people threw stones at me until they thought I was dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### I have spent a night and a day in the deep (ULT)

### and I have spent a night and a day in the open ocean hoping for rescue (UST)

Paul was referring to floating in the water after the ship he was on sank.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I was stoned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they threw stones at me to kill me](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Three times I was beaten with rods. Once [I was stoned](#). Three times I was shipwrecked. I have spent a night and a day in the deep;

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Three times I was beaten by my captors with wooden rods. Once [they threw stones at me to kill me](#). Three different ships I was on were lost to the storms, and I have spent a night and a day in the open ocean hoping for rescue.



## 2 Corinthians 11:26

### in dangers from false brothers (ULT) danger from false brothers who betrayed us (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and in danger from people who claimed to be brothers in Christ, but who betrayed us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [from robbers](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [the} wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from robbers](#)
- [the non-Jews](#)
- [the wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> often on journeys, in dangers from rivers, in dangers [from robbers](#), in dangers from {my own} countrymen, in dangers from [Gentiles](#), in dangers in {the} city, in dangers in {the} [wilderness](#), in dangers at sea, in dangers from false brothers;

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> I have been on many journeys and I have known dangers in rivers, I have been in danger [from robbers](#), danger from my own people, the Jews, danger from [the non-Jews](#), danger in cities, danger in [the wilderness](#), danger in the ocean, danger from false brothers who betrayed us.

## 2 Corinthians 11:27

### nakedness (ULT)

### without enough clothing (UST)

Here Paul exaggerates to show his need of clothing. Alternate translation: "without enough clothing to keep me warm" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in hard work](#)
- [hunger](#)
- [fasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I have worked hard](#)
- [I have been hungry](#)
- [nothing...eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [in hard work](#) and hardship, often in sleepless nights, in [hunger](#) and thirst, often in [fasting](#), in cold and nakedness;

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [I have worked hard](#) and been in hardship, often gone without sleep; [I have been hungry](#) and thirsty with [nothing to eat](#). I have been cold and without enough clothing.

## 2 Corinthians 11:28

**there is} the daily pressure on me {of} the concern {for} all the churches (ULT)**  
**I worry every day about how well the churches are doing (UST)**

Paul knows that God will hold him responsible for how well the **churches** obey God and speaks of that knowledge as if it were a heavy object pushing him down. Alternate translation: "I know that God will hold me accountable for the spiritual growth of all the churches, and so I always feel like a heavy object is pushing me down" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [daily](#)
- [churches](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I worry every day about how well...are doing](#)
- [churches](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> apart from these external {things}, {there is} the [daily](#) pressure on me {of} the concern {for} all the [churches](#).

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> In addition to all that, [I worry every day about how well](#) the [churches are doing](#).

## 2 Corinthians 11:29

**Who is weak, and I am not weak (ULT)**  
**There is no fellow believer who is weak,**  
**without...being weak with him (UST)**

This rhetorical question emphasizes that Paul cares about people. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Whenever anyone is weak, I feel that weakness also." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Who is weak, and I am not weak (ULT)**  
**There is no fellow believer who is weak,**  
**without...being weak with him (UST)**

The word **weak** is probably a metaphor for a spiritual condition, but no one is sure what Paul is speaking of, so it is best to use the same word here. Alternate translation: "I am weak whenever anyone else is weak." (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Who is caused to stumble, and I am not inflamed (ULT)**  
**me...There is no fellow believer who has led another person into sin, without**  
**me being very angry about it (UST)**

Here Paul's anger is spoken of as a burning inside him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Who is caused to stumble, and I am not inflamed (ULT)**  
**me...There is no fellow believer who has led another person into sin, without**  
**me being very angry about it (UST)**

Paul uses this question to express his anger when a fellow believer is caused to sin. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Whenever anyone causes a brother to sin, I am angry." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**is caused to stumble (ULT)**  
**who has led another person into sin (UST)**

Paul speaks of sin as if it were tripping over something and then falling. Alternate translation: "has been led to sin" or "has thought that God would permit him to sin because of something that someone else did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Who is weak, and I am not weak?  
 Who is caused to stumble, and I am not inflamed?

### UST

<sup>29</sup> There is no fellow believer who is weak, without me being weak with him.  
 There is no fellow believer who has led another person into sin, without me being very angry about it.

## 2 Corinthians 11:30

**the things of {my} weakness (ULT)  
only about things like these, things that  
show...how weak I am (UST)**

Alternate translation: "what shows how weak I am"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to boast
- I will boast {about}

### Translation Words - UST

- I must boast
- I will boast

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> If it is necessary to boast, I will boast {about} the things of {my} weakness.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> If I must boast, I will boast only about things like these, things that show how weak I am.

## 2 Corinthians 11:31

### I am not lying (ULT)

### I am not lying (UST)

Paul is using litotes to emphasize that he is telling the truth.  
 Alternate translation: "I am telling the absolute truth" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God and Father](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [blessed](#)
- [eternity](#)
- [knows](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God and Father](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [may everyone and everything give him praise](#)
- [he knows](#)
- [I am not lying](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> The [God and Father](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#), the one who is [blessed](#) to [eternity](#), [knows](#) that I am not lying!

### UST

<sup>31</sup> The [God and Father](#) of the [Lord Jesus](#) the [Messiah](#)—[may everyone and everything give him praise!](#)—[he knows I am not lying!](#)

## 2 Corinthians 11:32

**the ethnarch under Aretas the king was  
guarding the city (ULT)  
the governor under King Aretas put a guard  
around the city (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the governor whom King Aretas had appointed had told men to guard the city"

**to arrest me (ULT)  
hoping to arrest me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "so that they might catch and arrest me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Damascus
- ethnarch
- king
- to arrest

### Translation Words - UST

- the city of Damascus
- governor
- King
- hoping to arrest

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> in [Damascus](#), the [ethnarch](#) under Aretas the [king](#) was guarding the city of Damascus [to arrest](#) me.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> At [the city of Damascus](#), the [governor](#) under [King](#) Aretas put a guard around the city, [hoping to arrest](#) me.

## 2 Corinthians 11:33

### I was lowered in a basket (ULT) put me in a basket and let me down (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "some people put me in a basket and lowered me to the ground" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### his hands (ULT) from him (UST)

Paul uses the governor's **hands** as metonymy for the governor. Alternate translation: "from the governor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a basket
- hands

### Translation Words - UST

- put me...a basket
- from him

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> But I was lowered in a basket through a window through the wall, and I escaped from his hands.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> But my friends put me in a basket and let me down me out of the city, through a window in the wall, and I escaped from him.



## 2 Corinthians 12

### 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Paul continues defending his authority in this chapter.

When Paul was with the Corinthians, he proved himself to be an apostle by his powerful deeds. He had not ever taken anything from them. Now that he is coming for the third time, he will still not take anything. He hopes that when he visits, he will not need to be harsh with them. (See: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Paul's vision

Paul now defends his authority by telling about a wonderful vision of heaven. Although he speaks in the third person in verses 2-5, verse 7 indicates that he was the person who experienced the vision. It was so great, God gave him a physical handicap to keep him humble. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

##### Third heaven

Many scholars believe the "third" heaven is the dwelling place of God. This is because Scripture also uses "heaven" to refer to the sky (the "first" heaven) and the universe (the "second" heaven).

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical questions as he defends himself against his enemies who accused him: "For how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that I was not a burden to you?" "Did Titus take advantage of you? Did we not walk in the same way? Did we not walk in the same steps?" and "Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

##### Sarcasm

Paul uses sarcasm, a special type of irony, when he reminds them how he had helped them at no cost. He says, "Forgive me for this wrong!" He also uses regular irony when he says: "But, since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit." He uses it to introduce his defense against this accusation by showing how impossible it was to be true. (See: [Irony](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Paradox

A "paradox" is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. This sentence in verse 5 is a paradox: "I will not boast, except about my weaknesses." Most people do not boast about being weak. This

sentence in verse 10 is also a paradox: "For whenever I am weak, then I am strong." In verse 9, Paul explains why both of these statements are true. ([2 Corinthians 12:5](#))

## 2 Corinthians 12:1

### Connecting Statement:

In defending his apostleship from God, Paul continues to state specific things that have happened to him since he became a believer.

### I will go on...to (ULT) so I will continue by boasting...about (UST)

Alternate translation: "I will continue talking, but now about"

### visions and revelations of the Lord (ULT) some visions...the Lord gave me (UST)

This could mean: (1) Paul uses the words **visions** and **revelations** to mean the same thing in hendiadys for emphasis. Alternate translation: "things that the Lord has allowed only me to see" (2) Paul is speaking of two different things. Alternate translation: "secret things that the Lord has let me see with my eyes and other secrets that he has told me about" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to boast
- profitable
- visions
- revelations
- of the Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Even though it does no good
- I must continue to defend myself
- some visions...gave me
- some visions...gave me
- the Lord

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to boast, {though} not profitable. But I will go on to visions and revelations of the Lord.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Even though it does no good, I must continue to defend myself, so I will continue by boasting about some visions that the Lord gave me.

## 2 Corinthians 12:2

### I know a man in Christ (ULT) me, a man who is joined to the Messiah (UST)

Paul is actually speaking of himself as if he were speaking of someone else, but this should be translated literally if possible.

### whether in the body, I do not know, or out of the body, I do not know

Paul continues to describe himself as if this happened to another person. "I do not know if this man was in his physical body or in his spiritual body"

### the} third heaven (ULT) to the highest...heaven (UST)

Here, the **third heaven** refers to the dwelling place of God rather than the sky or outer space (the planets, stars, and the universe).

### Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- I do...know (2)
- I do...know (3)
- knows
- in Christ
- having been snatched
- the...heaven
- years
- Christ
- the body
- of...body
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- years
- God took...up
- my body, too
- only in my spirit or
- me, a man
- only in my spirit or (2)
- although only God knows (3)
- although only God knows
- who is joined to the Messiah
- to the Messiah
- heaven
- although only God knows

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I know a man in Christ—whether in the body, I do not know, or out of {the} body, I do not know, God knows—such a {man} having been snatched up to {the} third heaven 14 years ago.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Fourteen years ago God took me, a man who is joined to the Messiah, up to the highest heaven—although only God knows whether he took me up only in my spirit or in my body, too.

## 2 Corinthians 12:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I know that
- I do...know (2)
- knows
- body
- body
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- I
- God alone knows (2)
- God alone knows
- whether in my body
- only in my spirit
- God alone knows

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> And I know that such a man—whether in body, or out of the body, I do not know, God knows—

### UST

<sup>3</sup> And I—whether in my body or only in my spirit, God alone knows—

## 2 Corinthians 12:4

### he was caught up into Paradise (ULT) I was taken up...into a place in heaven called paradise (UST)

Paul continues his account of what happened to “this man” (verse 3). If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) God took this man into **paradise**. (2) an angel took this man into **paradise**. If possible, it would be best not to name the one who took the man: “someone took him up to paradise” or “they took him up to paradise.”

### he was caught up (ULT) I was taken up (UST)

Here, **caught up** refers to being suddenly and forcefully held and taken.

### Paradise (ULT) a place in heaven called paradise (UST)

Here, **paradise** could refer to: (1) heaven. (2) the third heaven. (3) a special place in heaven.

### Translation Words - ULT

- he was caught up
- are...permitted

### Translation Words - UST

- I was taken up
- I am...able to tell them to you

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> that he was caught up into Paradise and heard inexpressible words which are not permitted for a man to speak.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> I was taken up into a place in heaven called paradise. There I heard things that were so holy and that I am not able to tell them to you.

## 2 Corinthians 12:5

**such a {man} (ULT)  
that (UST)**

Alternate translation: “of that person”

**I will boast...not...except in {my} weaknesses  
(ULT)**

**I can boast...not I...God works in me, a weak  
man (UST)**

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: “I will boast only of my weaknesses”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will boast
- I will...boast (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- I can boast
- I can be proud only about how (2)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> On behalf of such a {man} I will boast. But on behalf of myself I will not boast, except in {my} weaknesses.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> I can boast about that—but God made all that happen, not I. For myself, I can be proud only about how God works in me, a weak man.

## 2 Corinthians 12:6

**so that} no one would think more of me than what he sees {in} me or hears from me (ULT)  
so that you can judge me only by what you hear me say, or by what you already know about me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "no one will give me more credit than what he sees in me or hears from me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to boast
- a fool
- the truth

### Translation Words - UST

- I kept on boasting about myself
- foolish
- what was true

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For even if I desire to boast, I will not be a fool, for I will be speaking the truth; but I refrain, {so that} no one would think more of me than what he sees {in} me or hears from me.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Even if I kept on boasting about myself, I would not be foolish, because I would be saying only what was true. However, I will boast no more, so that you can judge me only by what you hear me say, or by what you already know about me.





## **2 Corinthians 12:7**

**General Information:**

This verse reveals that Paul was speaking about himself beginning in [2 Corinthians 12:2](#).

**by the surpassing {nature} of the revelations (ULT)**  
**the subject of the amazing visions that God gave me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "because those revelations were so much greater than anything anyone else had ever seen"

**a thorn in the flesh was given to me (ULT)**  
**God sent me something very difficult to bear (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God gave me a thorn in the flesh" or "God allowed me to have a thorn in the flesh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a thorn in the flesh (ULT)**  
**something very difficult to bear (UST)**

Here Paul's physical problems are compared to a **thorn** piercing his **flesh**. Alternate translation: "an affliction" or "a physical problem" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a messenger of Satan (ULT)**  
**a device from Satan (UST)**

Alternate translation: "a servant of Satan"

**I would not become super arrogant (ULT)**  
**God did this so that...about the visions I saw (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I would not become too proud"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I would...become super arrogant
- I would...become super arrogant (2)
- of...revelations
- a thorn
- in...flesh
- a messenger
- of Satan
- he might torment

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> And therefore, so that I would not become super arrogant by the surpassing {nature} of the revelations, a thorn in the flesh was given to me—a messenger of Satan—so that he might torment me, so that I would not become super arrogant. <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> So I will leave the subject of the amazing visions that God gave me; except that I should tell you that God sent me something very difficult to bear, a device from Satan, in order to cause me to suffer. God did this so that I would not become proud about the visions I saw.

## Translation Words - UST

- visions that God gave me
- something very difficult to bear
- something very difficult to bear
- a device
- from Satan
- cause...to suffer
- I would...become proud
- about the visions I saw (2)

## 2 Corinthians 12:8

### Three times (ULT)

### I prayed three times (UST)

Paul put the words **three times** at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that he had prayed many times about his “thorn” (2 Corinthians 12:7).

### about this (ULT)

### about this matter (UST)

Alternate translation: “about this thorn in the flesh,” or “about this affliction”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I begged
- Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- each time I begged him

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Three times I begged the Lord about this, that he would remove {it} from me.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> I prayed three times to the Lord about this matter; each time I begged him to take this away from me.

## 2 Corinthians 12:9

**My grace is enough for you (ULT)  
All you need is for me to love you and be with you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I will be kind to you, and that is all you need"

**grace...for...power is being made perfect in weakness (ULT)  
to love you and be with you...because I do my most powerful work in you when you are weak (UST)**

Alternate translation: "for my power works best when you are weak"

**the power of Christ might reside upon me (ULT)  
the Messiah's power can come and make me strong (UST)**

Paul speaks of the **power of Christ** as if it were a tent built over him. This could mean: (1) people might see that Paul has the power of Christ. (2) Paul truly has the power of Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [power](#)
- [power \(2\)](#)
- [I will...boast](#)
- [of Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to love you and be with you](#)
- [because I do my most powerful work in you when you are weak](#)
- [power \(2\)](#)
- [be proud](#)
- [Messiah's](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But he has said to me, "My [grace](#) is enough for you, for {my} [power](#) is being made perfect in weakness." So I will most gladly [boast](#) even more in my weakness so that the [power of Christ](#) might reside upon me.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But he said to me, "No, I will not take this away from you. All you need is for me [to love you and be with you, because I do my most powerful work in you when you are weak.](#)" That is why I would rather [be proud](#) of my weakness, so that the [Messiah's power](#) can come and make me strong.



## **2 Corinthians 12:10**



**I am content for Christ’s sake in weaknesses, in insults, in troubles, in persecutions and distressing situations**

This could mean: (1) Paul is **content** in **weaknesses, insults, troubles, persecutions,** and **distressing situations** if these things come because I belong to Christ. (2) Paul is content in weakness if these things cause more people to know Christ.

**in weaknesses (ULT)  
with me. It may be that I must be weak (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when I am weak”

**in...insults (ULT)  
with me...or that others might treat me with scorn (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when people try to make me angry by saying that I am a bad person”

**in...hardships (ULT)  
with me...or that I must have great hardships (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when I am suffering”

**distresses (ULT)  
It may be that I will continue to suffer hardships of various kinds (UST)**

Alternate translation: “when there is trouble”

**for whenever I am weak, then I am powerful (ULT)  
because...when my power is gone, then I am at my strongest (UST)**

Paul is saying that when he is no longer **strong** enough to do what needs to be done, Christ, who is more powerful than Paul could ever be, will work through Paul to do what needs to be done. However, it would be best to translate these words literally, if your language allows.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I take delight
- persecutions
- of Christ
- powerful

**Translation Words - UST**

- I can face anything

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Therefore I take delight in weaknesses, in insults, in hardships, in persecutions and distresses for the sake of Christ; for whenever I am weak, then I am powerful.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> I can face anything because the Messiah is with me. It may be that I must be weak, or that others might treat me with scorn, or that I must have great hardships, or that others will try to kill me. It may be that I will continue to suffer hardships of various kinds. In any case, when my power is gone, then I am at my strongest.

- the Messiah is
- others will try to kill me
- I am at...strongest



## **2 Corinthians 12:11**

**I have become a fool (ULT)**  
**When I write this way, I am praising myself (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I am acting like a fool"

**you yourselves compelled me (ULT)**  
**When I write this way, I am praising myself... But I had to do so (UST)**

Alternate translation: "You forced me to talk this way"

**I...ought to be commended by you (ULT)**  
**in me...you should have had confidence (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you should have praised me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to be commended (ULT)**  
**had confidence (UST)**

See how you translated similar phrases in (3:1) and (4:2). Alternate translation: "been praised" or "been recommended"

**for I lacked nothing (ULT)**  
**I am just as good as (UST)**

By using the negative form, Paul is saying strongly that those Corinthians who think that he is **inferior** are wrong. Alternate translation: "For I am just as good as" (See: [Litotes](#))

**of the "super-apostles (ULT)**  
**these "super-apostles (UST)**

Paul uses irony here to show that those teachers are less important than people say they are. See how this is translated in [2 Corinthians 11:5](#). Alternate translation: "those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else" (See: [Irony](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a fool
- of...apostles

**Translation Words - UST**

- When I write this way, I am praising myself
- apostles

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> I have become a fool; you yourselves compelled me. For I ought to be commended by you, for I lacked nothing of the "super-apostles," even if I am nothing.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> When I write this way, I am praising myself. But I had to do so, because you should have had confidence in me. I am just as good as these "super-apostles," even though I am really nothing at all.

## 2 Corinthians 12:12

**Indeed, the signs of an apostle were performed (ULT)**

**I gave you the true signs of being an authentic apostle—miracles that I did (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form with emphasis on the **signs**, or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “it is the true signs of an apostle that I performed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**signs and wonders and mighty deeds**

These are the “signs of an apostle” that Paul performed “with all perseverance.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- signs
- of an apostle
- endurance
- wonders
- miracles

### Translation Words - UST

- signs
- very patiently...Wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus the Messiah
- of being an authentic apostle
- very patiently...Wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus the Messiah
- very patiently...Wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus the Messiah
- very patiently...Wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus the Messiah

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Indeed, the **signs of an apostle** were performed among you with all **endurance**—both **signs** and **wonders** and **miracles**.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I gave you the true **signs of being an authentic apostle—miracles that I did very patiently** among you: **Wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus the Messiah**.

## 2 Corinthians 12:13

**For what is {the way} that you were {treated} worse than the remaining churches, except that I myself did not burden you (ULT)  
You certainly were just as important as all the other churches! The only way you were different was that I received no money from you as I did from them (UST)**

Paul is emphasizing that the Corinthians are wrong to accuse him of wanting to do them harm. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "I treated you the same way I treated all the other churches, except that I myself did not burden you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For what is {the way} that you were {treated} worse than the remaining churches, except that I myself did not burden you? Forgive me this injustice!

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You certainly were just as important as all the other churches! The only way you were different was that I received no money from you as I did from them. Forgive me that I did not ask this from you!

**I myself did not burden you (ULT)  
I received no money from you as I did from them (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I did not ask you for money or other things I needed"

**Forgive me this injustice (ULT)  
Forgive me that I did not ask this from you (UST)**

Paul is being ironic to shame the Corinthians. Both he and they know that he has done them no wrong, but they have been treating him as though he has wronged them. (See: [Irony](#))

**this injustice (ULT)  
that I did not ask this from you (UST)**

Here, **this wrong** refers to not asking them for money and other things he needed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [churches](#)
- [did...burden](#)
- [Forgive](#)
- [injustice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all the other churches](#)
- [I received no money](#)
- [Forgive](#)
- [I did not ask this from you](#)

## 2 Corinthians 12:14

### but you (ULT)

### What I want is you (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "but what I want is that you love and accept me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### children should not save up for the parents

Young **children** are not responsible for saving money or other goods to give to their healthy **parents**.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will...burden you
- I do...seek
- children
- for...children

### Translation Words - UST

- I will...ask you for any money
- I do...want
- children
- of the children

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Behold! I am ready to come to you this third time, and **I will** not **burden you**. For **I do** not **seek** the {things} of yours, but you. For the **children** should not store up for the parents, but the parents for the **children**.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So listen to this! I am now ready to visit you for a third time, and on this trip, as on all the others, **I will** not **ask you for any money**. **I do** not **want** anything you have. What I want is you! You know the principle that we all follow in our families: The **children** should not pay the expenses of their parents, but the parents save up to pay the expenses **of the children**.



## 2 Corinthians 12:15

**I...will most gladly spend and be completely spent (ULT)**

**I...will most happily do everything I can...even if it means losing my life (UST)**

Paul speaks of his work and his physical life as if it were money that he or God could **spend**. Alternate translation: "I will gladly do any work and gladly allow God to permit people to kill me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the sake of your souls (ULT)**  
**for you (UST)**

The word **souls** is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "for you" or "so you will live well" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**If I love you more abundantly, am I to be loved less (ULT)**  
**If this means...I love you more than ever, surely you should love me more than ever as well (UST)**

This rhetorical question to emphasize that the Corinthians should love Paul. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "If I love you so much, you should not love me so little." or "If I love you so much, you should love me more than you do." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**more abundantly (ULT)**  
**more than ever (UST)**

It is not clear what it is that Paul's love is **more** than. It is probably best to use "very much" or a "so much" that can be compared to "so little" later in the sentence.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [souls](#)
- [I love](#)
- [am I to be loved](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you](#)
- [I love](#)
- [surely you should love me more than ever as well](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now I will most gladly spend and be completely spent for the sake of your [souls](#). If [I love](#) you more abundantly, [am I to be loved](#) less?

### UST

<sup>15</sup> I will most happily do everything I can for [you](#), even if it means losing my life. If this means that [I love](#) you more than ever, [surely you should love me more than ever as well](#).

## 2 Corinthians 12:16

**but, being a crafty person, I caught you by deceit (ULT)**

**someone might say that although...I tricked you into letting me myself pay for everything I needed (UST)**

Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians who think he lied to them even if he did not ask them for money. Alternate translation: "but others think I was deceptive and used trickery" (See: [Irony](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I...did...burden](#)
- [by deceit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [did...ask...for money](#)
- [I tricked](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But let it be {so}, I myself did not [burden](#) you, but, being a crafty person, I caught you [by deceit](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> And so, someone might say that although I did not [ask](#) you [for money](#), I [tricked](#) you into letting me myself pay for everything I needed.

## 2 Corinthians 12:17

**There is} no one whom I have sent to you, that through him I took advantage of you, is there (ULT)**

**I certainly never asked any of the men whom I sent to you to get money from you and bring it to me (UST)**

Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer is “no.” If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “No one that I sent to you has taken advantage of you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I have sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I sent](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> {There is} no one whom [I have sent](#) to you, that through him I took advantage of you, is there?

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> I certainly never asked any of the men whom [I sent](#) to you to get money from you and bring it to me!



## **2 Corinthians 12:18**

## Unless Titus took advantage of you (ULT) Titus never made you pay his expenses (UST)

Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer is “no.” If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “Titus certainly did not take advantage of you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Did we not walk in the same spirit (ULT) but they did not ask you to support them... Titus and the other brother treated you the same as I did. We lived our lives in the same way (UST)

Paul speaks of living as if it were walking on a road. Alternate translation: “We all walk in the same spirit.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Did we not walk in the same spirit (ULT) but they did not ask you to support them...Titus and the other brother treated you the same as I did. We lived our lives in the same way (UST)

Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer to the question is “yes.” If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “We all have the same attitude and live alike.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Did we} not {walk} in the same footsteps (ULT) you never had to pay anything for us (UST)

Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer to the question is “yes.” If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: “We all walk in the same steps.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Did we} not {walk} in the same footsteps (ULT) you never had to pay anything for us (UST)

Paul speaks of living as if it were walking on a road. Alternate translation: “We all do things the same way.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- I urged...to go
- Titus
- Titus
- sent...with him
- brother
- Did we...walk
- in...spirit

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> I urged Titus {to go} and sent the {other} brother with him. Unless Titus took advantage of you? Did we not walk in the same spirit? {Did we} not {walk} in the same footsteps?

### UST

<sup>18</sup> For example, I sent Titus and the other brother to you, but they did not ask you to support them. Titus never made you pay his expenses. Titus and the other brother treated you the same as I did. We lived our lives in the same way; you never had to pay anything for us.

## Translation Words - UST

- For example, I sent
- Titus
- Titus
- Titus
- other brother to you
- Titus and the other brother treated you the same as I did. We lived our lives
- way

## 2 Corinthians 12:19

**Do you think all of this time that we are defending ourselves to you (ULT)**

**Surely, you do not really think that I have been trying to defend myself (UST)**

Paul uses this question to acknowledge something that the people may have been thinking. He does this so that he can assure them that it is not true. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "Perhaps you think that all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Before God (ULT)**

**God knows that (UST)**

Paul speaks of **God** knowing everything Paul does as if God were physically present and observed everything Paul said and did. Alternate translation: "With God as witness" or "In the presence of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**are} for the sake of your building up (ULT)**

**that...in order to strengthen you (UST)**

Paul speaks of knowing how to obey God and desiring to obey him as if it were physical growth. Alternate translation: "so that you would know God and obey him better" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [beloved](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God knows that](#)
- [I am joined to the Messiah](#)
- [I am joined to the Messiah](#)
- [in trusting him](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Do you think all of this time that we are defending ourselves to you? Before [God in Christ](#) we are speaking, but all these {things}, [beloved](#), {are} for the sake of your building up.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Surely, you do not really think that I have been trying to defend myself in this letter. [God knows that I am joined to the Messiah](#), and that I have written everything in order to strengthen you [in trusting him](#).





## **2 Corinthians 12:20**

**I might not find you such as I wish (ULT)  
I may not find you as I wished. When I come  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "I may not like what I find" or "I may not like what I see you doing"

**and I might be found by you not such as you  
wish (ULT)  
to you...you may not want to listen to me  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "you might not like what you see in me"

**perhaps somehow {there may be} quarreling,  
jealousy, ragings, rivalries, slanders, gossips,  
inflated egos, {and (ULT)  
that you are arguing a lot among yourselves,  
that some of you are jealous of one another, and that some of you become  
very angry with each other. I fear that some of you are putting yourselves  
first, that you are talking about each other, and that some of you are very  
selfish (UST)**

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind the words **quarreling, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalries, slander, gossip, arrogance, and disorder**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. This could mean: (1) some of you will be arguing with us, jealous of us, suddenly becoming very angry with us, trying to take our places as leaders, speaking falsely about us, telling about our private lives, being proud, and opposing us as we try to lead you. (2) some of you will be arguing with each other, jealous of each other, suddenly becoming very angry with each other, quarreling with each other over who will be the leader, speaking falsely about each other, telling about each other's private lives, being proud, and opposing those whom God has chosen to lead you. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I fear {that
- jealousy
- rivalries
- slanders
- inflated egos

**Translation Words - UST**

- But...I fear
- that some of you are jealous of one another
- I fear that some of you are putting yourselves first
- that you are talking about each other
- and that some of you are very selfish

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> For I fear {that} perhaps somehow having come I might not find you such as I wish, and I might be found by you not such as you wish; perhaps somehow {there may be} quarreling, jealousy, ragings, rivalries, slanders, gossips, inflated egos, {and} riots,

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> But when I come to you, I may not find you as I wished. When I come you may not want to listen to me. I fear that you are arguing a lot among yourselves, that some of you are jealous of one another, and that some of you become very angry with each other. I fear that some of you are putting yourselves first, that you are talking about each other, and that some of you are very selfish.



## **2 Corinthians 12:21**

**I would grieved for many of those having sinned (ULT)**  
**I will have to mourn for many of you who disobeyed God earlier (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I will be grieved because many of them have not given up their old sins"

**not having repented from the impurity and sexual immorality and debauchery (ULT)**  
**when...have not stopped sinning in various sexual ways (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul is saying almost the same thing three times for emphasis. Alternate translation: "did not stop committing the sexual sins that they practiced" (2) Paul is speaking of three different sins. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**from the impurity (ULT)**  
**when...in various sexual ways (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **impurity**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "of secretly thinking about and desiring things that do not please God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**sexual immorality (ULT)**  
**various sexual ways (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **sexual immorality**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "of doing sexually immoral deeds" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**debauchery (ULT)**  
**various sexual ways (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **lustful indulgence**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "doing things that satisfy immoral sexual desire" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [might humble](#)
- [I would grieved for](#)
- [having sinned](#)
- [having repented](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> {perhaps} having come to you again, my [God might humble](#) me before you, and [I would grieved for](#) many of those [having sinned](#) and not [having repented](#) from the impurity and [sexual immorality](#) and debauchery in which they engaged.

12:7 <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> I am afraid that when I come to you and see you, [God will humble](#) me. I am afraid that [I will have to mourn](#) for many of you who [disobeyed God earlier](#) and have not [stopped sinning](#) in [various sexual ways](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- will humble
- I will have to mourn
- disobeyed God earlier
- have...stopped sinning
- various sexual ways

## 2 Corinthians 13

### 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Paul finishes defending his authority. He then concludes the letter with a final greeting and blessing.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Preparation

Paul instructs the Corinthians as he prepares to visit them. He is hoping to avoid needing to discipline anyone in the church so he can visit them joyfully. (See: [disciple](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Power and weakness

Paul repeatedly uses the contrasting words “power” and “weakness” in this chapter. The translator should use words that are understood to be opposites of each other.

##### “Examine yourselves to see if you are in the faith. Test yourselves.”

Scholars are divided over what these sentences mean. Some scholars say that Christians are to test themselves to see whether their actions align with their Christian faith. The context favors this understanding. Others say these sentences mean that Christians should look at their actions and question whether they are genuinely saved. (See: [faith](#) and [save, saved, safe, salvation](#))



## 2 Corinthians 13:1

**Every matter must be established on the basis of {the} mouth of two or three witnesses (ULT)  
The principle in dealing with these issues is what the scripture says: “Every accusation against another must be based on the testimony of two or three persons,” not just one (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Believe that someone has done something wrong only after two or three people have said the same thing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [persons,” not just one](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> This {is} the third time {that} I am coming to you. “Every matter must be established on the basis of {the} mouth of two or three [witnesses](#).”

### UST

<sup>1</sup> This is the third time I am coming to you to deal with these matters. The principle in dealing with these issues is what the scripture says: “Every accusation against another must be based on the testimony of two or three [persons,” not just one](#).”

## 2 Corinthians 13:2

**to those who sinned before...to...all...the rest (ULT)**

**to those...to the...entire...church (UST)**

Alternate translation: "all you other people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- when
- to those who sinned before

### Translation Words - UST

- When
- who had sinned

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I have previously said **when** being present the second {time}, and {though} being absent, I also say now—**to those who sinned before** and to all the rest—that if I would come to them again, I will not spare {anyone},

### UST

<sup>2</sup> **When** I was there on the second visit I said to those **who had sinned** and who had been charged before the church, and to the entire church, and I will say it again: I will not overlook these charges.

## 2 Corinthians 13:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- you are seeking
- of...Christ
- is powerful

### Translation Words - UST

- you are looking
- the Messiah
- by his great power

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> since you are seeking proof of the Christ speaking in me, who is not weak toward you but is powerful among you.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> I tell you this because you are looking for proof that the Messiah is speaking through me. He is not weak in dealing with you; instead, he is working in you by his great power.

## 2 Corinthians 13:4

### also...he was...crucified (ULT) We learn from the Messiah's example...they crucified him (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they crucified him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [he was...crucified](#)
- [he lives](#)
- [we will live](#)
- [God's](#)
- [God's \(2\)](#)
- [power](#)
- [power \(2\)](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [they crucified him](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [has made him alive again](#)
- [will strengthen us as we talk \(2\)](#)
- [has made him alive again](#)
- [we live](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For [he was](#) also [crucified](#) as a result of weakness, but [he lives](#) as a result of [God's power](#). For we also are weak in him, but [we will live](#) with {him} as a result of [God's power](#) toward you.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> We learn from the Messiah's example, because [they crucified him](#) when he was weak, yet [God has made him alive again](#). And we, too, are weak as [we live](#) and follow his example, but with him, [God will strengthen us as we talk](#) with you about these sins that some of you have committed.

## 2 Corinthians 13:5

### in...you (ULT)

### you trust in how God loves you and has mercy on you...you (UST)

Here, **in you** could mean: (1) Jesus is living inside each individual. (2) Jesus is living among them, part of and the most important member of the group.

### Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- Examine
- do you...fully realize {this}
- Jesus
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- You must look for evidence that
- you trust in how God loves you and has mercy on you
- you must put...to the test
- and ask if Jesus
- the Messiah lives

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Test yourselves, whether you are in the **faith**. **Examine** yourselves. Or **do you not fully realize {this}** about yourselves, that **Jesus Christ {is}** in you —unless you are unapproved?

### UST

<sup>5</sup> It is yourselves whom you must examine and see how you live. **You must look for evidence that you trust in how God loves you and has mercy on you**. It is you whom you must put yourself **to the test and ask if Jesus the Messiah lives** within you? He lives in every one of you, unless, of course, you fail this test.

## 2 Corinthians 13:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I hope
- you will realize

### Translation Words - UST

- I hope
- you will find

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> And I hope that you will realize that we ourselves are not unapproved.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> And I hope that you will find that we pass the test and the Messiah lives in us.

## 2 Corinthians 13:7

**you may not do anything wrong (ULT)  
that you may not do anything that is wrong  
(UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the double-negative **not ... wrong**, you can express it in positive form. Alternate translation: “you will do everything right” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**approved (ULT)  
want to seem better than you by passing that  
test (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to be great teachers and live the truth”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we pray...that](#)
- [God](#)
- [wrong](#)
- [good](#)
- [if](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we pray](#)
- [God](#)
- [that is wrong](#)
- [right things](#)
- [seem](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now [we pray](#) to [God that](#) you may not do anything [wrong](#), not so that we ourselves might be seen {as} approved, but so that you yourselves might do what {is} [good](#), even [if](#) we ourselves might {seem to} be unapproved.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Now [we pray](#) to [God](#) that you may not do anything [that is wrong](#). We pray for this, not because we want to seem better than you by passing that test. Instead, we want you to know and do the [right things](#). Even if we [seem](#) to have failed, we want you to succeed.

## 2 Corinthians 13:8

**not...we can...do} anything against the truth  
(ULT)**

**cannot...we...do anything against the truth  
(UST)**

Alternate translation: "we are not able to keep people from learning the truth"

### Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- truth (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- The truth controls what we do (2)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For we can not {do} anything against the truth, but only on behalf of the truth.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> The truth controls what we do; we cannot do anything against the truth.



## 2 Corinthians 13:9

**for your restoration (ULT)  
you may always trust and obey God  
completely (UST)**

Alternate translation: "that you may become spiritually mature"

### Translation Words - ULT

- we rejoice
- powerful
- We...pray {for}

### Translation Words - UST

- We have joy
- are strong
- We pray

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For we rejoice whenever we are weak, but you are powerful. We also pray {for} this: for your restoration.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> We have joy when we are weak and you are strong. We pray that you may always trust and obey God completely.

## 2 Corinthians 13:10

### for building up and not for tearing down (ULT) I prefer to encourage you and not to make you weaker (UST)

Paul speaks of helping the Corinthians to know Christ better as if he were constructing a building. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Corinthians 10:8](#). Alternate translation: “to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [Lord](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [an apostle](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For this reason, I write these {things} {while} being absent so that when I am present, I would not treat {you} harshly according to the [authority](#) which the [Lord](#) gave to me for building up and not for tearing down.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> I am away from you now as I write this to you. When I come to you, I do not have to deal harshly with you. Because the [Lord](#) made me [an apostle](#), I prefer to encourage you and not to make you weaker.

## 2 Corinthians 13:11

### Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter to the Corinthian believers.

### Be restored (ULT)

### Act and behave better than you have been acting (UST)

Alternate translation: "Work toward maturity"

### think the same (ULT)

### Agree with each other (UST)

Alternate translation: "live in harmony with one another"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- rejoice
- be encouraged
- think
- live in peace
- peace
- God
- of love

### Translation Words - UST

- brothers and sisters, is this
- Rejoice
- and allow the Lord to give you courage
- Agree with each other
- live in peace together
- brings you peace
- If you do these things, God
- loves you

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Finally, **brothers, rejoice!** Be restored, **be encouraged, think** the same, **live in peace.** And the **God of love** and **peace** will be with you.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> The last thing, **brothers and sisters, is this: Rejoice!** Act and behave better than you have been acting, **and allow the Lord to give you courage.** **Agree with each other** and **live in peace together.** **If you do these things, God, who loves you and brings you peace,** will be with you.

## 2 Corinthians 13:12

**with a holy kiss (ULT)  
in a way (UST)**

Alternate translation: "with Christian love"

**of the saints (ULT)  
that tells everybody...love each other (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those whom God has set apart for himself"

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- a...kiss
- of...saints

### Translation Words - UST

- a way
- a way
- that tells everybody...love each other

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Greet each other with a holy kiss. All of the saints greet you. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Welcome each other in a way that tells everybody how much you love each other.

## 2 Corinthians 13:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus Christ
- Christ
- love
- of God
- fellowship
- of...Holy Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- the Lord...Jesus the Messiah
- the Messiah
- will bless you and be kind to you
- May God
- bless you with his love
- Holy Spirit
- join...together

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The [grace](#) of the [Lord Jesus Christ](#) and the [love of God](#) and the [fellowship](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#) {be} with all of you. <sup>[2]</sup> 13:12 <sup>[1]</sup> to verse 13, but the best manuscripts include it here. 13:13 <sup>[2]</sup> from verse 12 and place it this verse. The text of this verse then becomes verse 14.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> I pray that [the Lord Jesus the Messiah](#), will bless you and be kind to you! May God bless you with his love, and may the [Holy Spirit](#) join all your hearts [together](#).

## 2 Corinthians 13:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**UST**

**14** May the Lord Jesus the Messiah act kindly toward you, may God love you, and may the Holy Spirit be with you all.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 32**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)



The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:6](#); [5:18](#); [7:15](#); [8:11](#); [8:20](#); [8:23](#); [9:7](#); [10:1](#); [11:6](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:3; 1:6; 1:8; 1:11; 2:2; 2:3; 2:6; 2:7; 2:12; 2:15; 2:16; 3:2; 3:3; 3:7; 3:10; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:18; 4:3; 4:8; 4:9; 4:10; 4:11; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:18; 5:1; 5:3; 5:4; 5:10; 5:11; 5:20; 6:3; 6:8; 6:9; 6:12; 6:17; 7:4; 7:5; 7:9; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 8:1; 8:13; 8:15; 8:18; 8:19; 8:23; 9:5; 9:9; 9:11; 9:13; 10:18; 11:10; 11:12; 11:25; 11:33; 12:7; 12:11; 12:12; 13:1; 13:4](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:17](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [Notes](#); [2:3](#); [2:9](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:16](#); [5:11](#); [5:21](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:10](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [Notes](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:26](#); [12:14](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**



We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἐν ἧ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:8](#); [1:13](#); [2:11](#); [4:2](#); [4:16](#); [6:1](#); [6:14](#); [6:17](#); [8:15](#); [13:7](#))

## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, “Master!**  
We are perishing!”

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:17](#); [2:16](#); [7:15](#))

## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:9](#); [2:17](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [4:5](#); [4:18](#); [5:9](#); [7:10](#); [10:18](#); [11:11](#); [11:23](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.



(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:9](#); [7:11](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

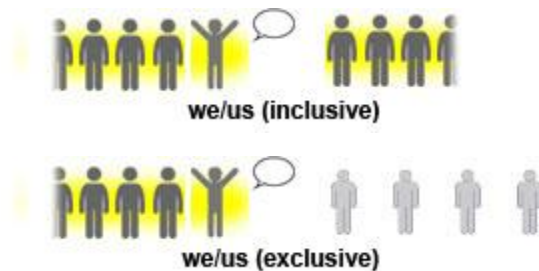
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Corinthians](#); [2 Corinthians 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:12](#); [3:18](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [5:21](#); [6:4](#); [6:16](#); [7:5](#); [10:11](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Corinthians](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:5](#))

## Hendiadys

### Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

### Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:



(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:2](#); [12:1](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,  
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Corinthians](#); [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [6:15](#); [9:2](#))

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame**. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.



The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.  
or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:8](#); [11:20](#); [11:23](#); [11:27](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:9](#); [1:24](#); [4:14](#); [5:13](#); [7:3](#); [7:9](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [11:23](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshipping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:7](#); [Notes](#); [11:5](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [Notes](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:16](#))

## Litotes

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good.**”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:6](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:31](#); [12:11](#))



## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,  
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:8](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

**(Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 1:5](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:22](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [Notes](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:9](#); [3:11](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:15](#); [4:17](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:17](#); [6:3](#); [6:7](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [8:2](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [Notes](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:10](#); [9:12](#); [Notes](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [Notes](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:9](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:20](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#); [12:15](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [13:10](#))



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [1:22](#); [2:4](#); [2:17](#); [3:2](#); [3:15](#); [4:2](#); [4:6](#); [5:12](#); [5:19](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [11:18](#); [11:33](#); [12:15](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:3](#); [6:16](#); [10:12](#); [12:21](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [3:6](#); [4:12](#); [8:2](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)



Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1 General Notes](#); [1:17](#); [2:2](#); [2:16](#); [3:1](#); [3:8](#); [Notes](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [10:7](#); [Notes](#); [11:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:29](#); [Notes](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part2]]

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:6](#); [5:1](#); [7:5](#); [8:16](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Corinthians](#))

## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:19](#))





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 35**

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:22](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of "afflicting oneself" or "afflicting one's soul" means to abstain from eating food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, [suffer](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:8](#); [8:13](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:4](#); [9:9](#); [11:31](#))

# Almighty

## Facts:

The term "Almighty" literally means "all-powerful." In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles "the Almighty" or "the Almighty One" refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles "Almighty God" and "God Almighty" and "Lord Almighty" and "Lord God Almighty."

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "All-powerful" or "Completely Powerful One" or "God, who is completely powerful."
- Ways to translate the phrase "Lord God Almighty" could include "God, the Powerful Ruler" or "Powerful Sovereign God" or "Mighty God who is Master over everything."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G38410

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 6:18](#))

## **amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:12](#))

## ambassador, representative

### Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [messenger](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:20
- Luke 14:31-33
- Luke 19:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G42430

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 5:20](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:20](#))



## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:14](#))

## anguish

### Definition:

The term “anguish” refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term “anguish” could also be translated as “emotional distress” or “deep sorrow” or “severe pain.”

### Bible References:

- Jeremiah 6:24
- Jeremiah 19:9
- Job 15:24
- Luke 16:24
- Psalms 116:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G09280, G36000, G49280

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:4](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see Symbolic Action.)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:21](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [Notes](#); [11:5](#); [11:13](#); [Notes](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#))

## armor, armory

### Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 6:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 4:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G36960, G38330

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:7](#); [10:4](#))

## Asia

### Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Rome, [Paul](#), Ephesus)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G07730

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:8](#))

## assign, assigned, assignment, reassign

### Facts:

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: appoint, Samuel, Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:48
- Daniel 12:13
- Jeremiah 43:11
- Joshua 18:2
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Psalms 78:55

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2506, H3335, H4487, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G33070

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:13](#))



## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, [king](#), [ruler](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:8](#); [13:10](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:11](#); [10:6](#))

## **basket, basketfuls**

### **Definition:**

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, [Moses](#), Nile River, Noah)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 9:25
- Amos 8:1
- John 6:13-15
- Judges 6:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G28940, G34260, G45530, G47110

(**Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 11:33](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), Elisha, [endure](#), [fruit](#), iniquity, [report](#), sheep, [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:4](#); [4:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#))**

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:1](#); [12:19](#))



## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:3](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [11:31](#))

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- James 3:14
- James 4:15-17
- Psalms 44:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G02120, G02130, G17400, G26200, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31660

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [1:14](#); [5:12](#); [7:4](#); [7:14](#); [8:24](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [10:8](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [10:16](#); [10:17](#); [11:10](#); [11:12](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:30](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:9](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:10](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [10:10](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#))

## **bold, boldness, emboldened**

### **Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [good news](#), [redeem](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 2:28
- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- Acts 4:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0982, H5797, G06620, G22920, G36180, G39540, G39550, G51110, G51120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:12](#); [7:4](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:10](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [1:8](#); [2:13](#); [8:1](#); [8:18](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [11:9](#); [12:18](#); [13:11](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:8](#); [2:5](#); [5:4](#); [11:9](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#))



## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:23](#))

## captive, captivate, captivity, catch

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, [prison](#), [seize](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:5](#))

## caught up

### Definition:

The term "caught up" often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase "caught up with" refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is "overtake."
- The apostle Paul talked about being "caught up" to the third heaven. This could also be translated as "taken up."
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be "caught up" together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, "my sins have caught up with me" could be translated as "I am receiving the consequences of my sin" or "because of my sin I am suffering" or "my sin is causing me trouble."

(see: [miracle](#), [overtake](#), [suffer](#), [trouble](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 8:39-40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1692, G07260

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:2](#); [12:4](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:13](#); [12:14](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: 2 Corinthians 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:19; 1:21; 2:10; 2:12; 2:14; 2:15; 2:17; 3:3; 3:4; 3:14; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 5:10; 5:14; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 6:15; 8:9; 8:23; 9:13; 10:1; 10:5; 10:7; 10:14; 11:2; 11:3; 11:10; 11:13; 11:23; 12:2; 12:9; 12:10; 12:19; 13:3; 13:5; 13:13)



## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [8:1](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [11:8](#); [11:28](#); [12:13](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:17](#); [Notes](#); [7:1](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [2:7](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:13](#); [13:11](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 8:8](#))

## companion, fellow worker, friend

### Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:24](#); [8:23](#))



## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:3](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:9](#); [7:3](#))

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:13](#))

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G22920, G39540, G39820, G40060, G52870

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:15](#); [2:3](#); [3:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [7:16](#); [8:22](#); [9:4](#); [10:2](#); [11:17](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:21](#); [2:8](#))

## conscience

### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:19
- 1 Timothy 3:9
- 2 Corinthians 5:11
- 2 Timothy 1:3
- Romans 9:1
- Titus 1:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G48930

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [4:2](#); [5:11](#))

## Corinth, Corinthians

### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Apollos, [Timothy](#), [Titus](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- 2 Corinthians 1:23-24
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G28810, G28820

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [1:23](#); [6:11](#))

## corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

### Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:16](#); [7:2](#); [11:3](#))



## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and "encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:6](#); [7:4](#); [7:6](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3 General Notes](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#))

## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:17](#))

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 13:4](#))

## cut off, cut down

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:12](#))

## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, Assyria, [believe](#), Syria)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 11:32](#))



## darkness

### Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#), dominion, kingdom, [light](#), redeem, [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:6](#); [Notes](#); [6:14](#); [Notes](#))

# day

## Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:14](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [4:16](#); [6:2](#); [11:28](#))

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), judgment day, [Lord](#), resurrection, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 Thessalonians 5:2
- 2 Peter 3:10
- 2 Thessalonians 2:2
- Acts 2:20-21
- Philippians 1:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G22500, G29620

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:14](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:8](#); [11:3](#); [12:16](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:10](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:10](#))

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:22](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:26](#))



## devour

### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:20](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:16](#); [3:7](#); [Notes](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [6:9](#); [7:3](#); [7:10](#); [11:23](#))

## disciple

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 11:3
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:8** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G31000, G31010, G31020

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes](#))

## discipline, self-discipline

### Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:4
- Hebrews 12:5
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G14680

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:9](#))

## dishonor, dishonorable

### Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as to “not honor” or to “treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:10
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:7
- John 8:48
- Leviticus 18:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6172, H6173, H7034, H7043, G08180, G08190, G08200, G26170

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:8](#); [11:21](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:6](#))



## divine

### Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [false god](#), [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 1:4
- Romans 1:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23040, G29990

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:4](#))

## earth, land

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:7](#); [5:1](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:6](#); [6:4](#); [12:12](#))

## enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G13980, G14020, G26150

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:20](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:5](#))

## epistle, letter

### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [exhort](#), teach)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:27
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0104, H0107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G11210, G19920

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [7:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1 General Notes](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [5:1](#))



## Eve

### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Adam, [life](#), [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:3
- Genesis 3:20
- Genesis 4:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:13** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **2:2** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **2:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:1** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **48:2** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:8** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2332, G20960

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:3](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:10](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), worship, [glory](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:7](#); [11:20](#))

## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:8](#); [5:20](#); [6:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:17](#); [9:5](#); [10:1](#); [12:8](#); [12:18](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:7](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [4:6](#); [8:24](#); [11:20](#))

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:24](#); [Notes](#); [4:13](#); [Notes](#); [5:7](#); [8:7](#); [10:15](#); [Notes](#); [13:5](#))



## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(**Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 1:18](#))

## famine

### Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:27](#))

## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 3:4-5
- Luke 5:34
- Mark 2:19
- Matthew 6:18
- Matthew 9:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:5](#); [11:27](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:2](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:11](#); [7:1](#); [7:5](#); [7:11](#); [7:15](#); [11:3](#); [12:20](#))

## fellowship

### Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:14](#); [8:4](#); [9:13](#); [13:13](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [1:17](#); [4:11](#); [5:16](#); [7:1](#); [7:5](#); [Notes](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [11:18](#); [12:7](#))



## fool, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:1](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [12:6](#); [12:11](#))

## **forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:7](#); [2:10](#); [12:13](#))

## **forsake, forsaken, leave**

### **Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:9](#))

## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:17](#); [11:7](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:10](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:6](#))



## Gentile

### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:26](#))

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:11](#); [9:15](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:20](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:18](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:15](#); [4:17](#); [6:8](#); [8:19](#); [8:23](#); [9:13](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: 2 Corinthians 1:1; 1:3; 1:4; 1:9; 1:12; 1:18; 1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 1:23; 2:14; 2:15; 2:17; 3:4; 3:5; 4:2; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:15; 5:1; 5:5; 5:11; 5:13; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 6:1; 6:4; 6:7; 6:16; 7:1; 7:6; 7:9; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 8:1; 8:5; 8:16; 9:7; 9:8; 9:11; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 10:5; 10:13; 11:7; 11:11; 12:2; 12:3; 12:19; 12:21; 13:4; 13:7; 13:11; 13:13)

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [6:18](#); [11:31](#))



## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, [image](#), kingdom, worship)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:16](#))

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God." (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
- The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."
- Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."
- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."
- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."
- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also [evil](#), honor, [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:2](#))**

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:12](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [Notes](#); [8:18](#); [9:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:16](#); [Notes](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:10](#); [8:21](#); [9:8](#); [13:7](#))



## **gossip, gossips, talk nonsense**

### **Definition:**

The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: [slander](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 5:13
- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Leviticus 19:15-16
- Proverbs 16:28
- Romans 1:29-31

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5372, G26360, G53970

(**Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 12:20](#))

## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:32](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:2](#); [1:12](#); [1:15](#); [Notes](#); [4:15](#); [6:1](#); [8:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [8:16](#); [8:19](#); [9:8](#); [9:14](#); [12:9](#); [13:13](#))

## groan

### Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: cry)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:2
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:2
- Psalms 32:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0584, H0585, H0602, H0603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G47260, G47270, G49590

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:2](#); [5:4](#))

## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), honor, [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:33](#))

## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:14](#); [6:4](#))

## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term "reap" means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, [good news](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:6](#))



## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:22](#); [2:4](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:15](#); [4:6](#); [5:12](#); [6:11](#); [7:3](#); [8:16](#); [9:7](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5 General Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [Notes](#); [12:2](#))

## Hebrew

### Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 11:22](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:22](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [5:5](#); [6:6](#); [13:13](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [7:1](#); [Notes](#); [13:12](#))



## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:7](#); [1:10](#); [1:13](#); [3:12](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [5:11](#); [8:5](#); [10:15](#); [13:6](#))

## hour

### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: hour)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G56100

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:8](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:1](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:6](#); [10:1](#); [11:7](#); [12:21](#))

## image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), image of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:18](#); [4:4](#))

## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:21](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:17](#); [3:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [10:17](#); [12:2](#); [12:19](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:7](#); [3:13](#); [11:22](#))



## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), prophet, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:13](#); [8:15](#); [9:9](#))

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:2](#); [12:20](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ, God, God the Father](#), high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:14](#); [1:19](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:14](#); [8:9](#); [11:4](#); [11:31](#); [13:5](#); [13:13](#))

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:24](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:24](#); [2:3](#); [6:10](#); [7:4](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:13](#); [7:16](#); [8:2](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:16](#))



## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:1](#); [5:14](#))

## kind [NOT kindness]

### Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

### Bible References:

- Genesis 1:21
- Genesis 1:24
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 13:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G10850, G54490

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:6](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:32](#))

# kiss

## Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 13:12](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:7](#); [1:8](#); [2:4](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:14](#); [3:2](#); [4:6](#); [4:14](#); [5:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:11](#); [5:16](#); [5:21](#); [6:6](#); [6:9](#); [8:1](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [9:2](#); [10:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:11](#); [11:31](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#))

## labor, laborer, work, hard work

### Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:5](#); [7:10](#); [10:15](#); [11:13](#); [11:23](#); [11:27](#))



## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, [law](#), [Moses](#), Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23

- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4
- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:14](#); [12:4](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:8](#); [2:16](#); [3:6](#); [Notes](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [5:4](#); [5:15](#); [6:9](#); [6:16](#); [7:3](#); [13:4](#))

## light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

### Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:4](#); [4:6](#); [Notes](#); [6:14](#); [Notes](#); [11:14](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: Simile)
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:14](#); [2:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [4:1](#); [5:20](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:13](#); [6:16](#); [7:14](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:15](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [9:9](#); [10:2](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:14](#); [11:3](#); [11:12](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [13:2](#); [13:7](#))



## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:14](#); [2:12](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [4:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [8:5](#); [8:9](#); [8:19](#); [8:21](#); [10:8](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [11:17](#); [11:31](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:13](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:4](#); [2:8](#); [5:14](#); [6:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:24](#); [9:7](#); [11:11](#); [12:15](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#))

## Macedonia

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), Berea, [faith](#), [good news](#), Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- 1 Timothy 1:3-4
- Acts 16:10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 4:14-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G31090, G31100

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:16](#); [2:13](#); [7:5](#); [8:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [11:9](#))

## meek, meekness

### Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 2:25
- Matthew 5:5
- Matthew 11:29
- Psalms 37:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6035, H6037, G42350, G42360, G42390, G42400

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:1](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:1](#))



## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 8:23](#); [12:7](#))

## mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:14](#); [4:4](#); [11:3](#); [13:11](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), prophet, [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:12](#))

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:7](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#))

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:21](#))

## multiply, multiplied, multiplication

### Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:5](#); [3:9](#); [4:15](#); [8:2](#); [8:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:10](#))

## obey, keep

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [disobey](#), kingdom, law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:9](#); [7:15](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#))



## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), persevere)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:6](#))

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [10:1](#))**

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:2](#); [13:11](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:16](#))

## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), nation, tribe, [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:16](#))

# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:15](#); [4:3](#); [4:9](#))



## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:9](#); [12:10](#))

## plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

### Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 6:8
- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:6](#); [9:10](#))

## pledge, pledged

### Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:22](#); [5:5](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:10](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:8](#); [4:7](#); [6:7](#); [8:3](#); [10:4](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 8:18](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:11](#); [9:14](#); [13:7](#); [13:9](#))



## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: declare, [good news](#), [Jesus](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:19](#); [4:5](#); [11:4](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:5](#); [11:23](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 8:10; 12:1](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>⚡</sup>
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:20](#); [7:1](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:20](#))**

## puffed up

### Definition:

The term “puffed up” is a figurative expression that refers to being proud or arrogant. (See: [Idiom](#))

- A person who is puffed up has an attitude of feeling superior to others.
- Paul taught that knowing a lot of information or having religious experiences can lead to being “puffed up” or proud.
- Other languages may have a similar idiom or a different one that expresses this meaning, such as “having a big head.”
- This could also be translated as “very proud” or “disdainful of others” or “haughty” or “thinking oneself better than others.”

(See also: arrogant, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:6-7
- 1 Corinthians 8:1
- 2 Corinthians 12:6-7
- Habakkuk 2:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6075, G54480

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:7](#))



## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:6](#))**

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:11](#); [11:2](#))

## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:9](#); [4:14](#); [5:15](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:10](#); [6:1](#); [6:17](#); [7:2](#); [7:15](#); [8:17](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [11:16](#); [11:24](#))

## reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

### Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G06040, G12590, G24330, G26430, G26440

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5 General Notes](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#))



## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [12:21](#))

## report, reported, tell, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:7](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:13](#); [7:5](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(**Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 3 General Notes](#); [3:3](#); [4:2](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [7:12](#); [11:6](#); [12:1](#); [12:7](#))

## reward, prize, deserve

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9 General Notes](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, [evil](#), honor, mighty, [punish](#), rebel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 6:7](#))



## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:9](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [5:21](#); [Notes](#); [6:7](#); [6:14](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [Notes](#); [11:15](#))

## rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:24](#))

## saint

### Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [8:4](#); [9:1](#); [9:12](#); [13:12](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), kingdom of God, tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:11](#); [11:14](#); [12:7](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1 General Notes](#); [1:6](#); [2:15](#); [6:2](#); [7:10](#); [Notes](#))



## seal, sealed, unsealed

### Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), tomb)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:22](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:10](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:14](#); [13:3](#))

## seize, seizure, capture

### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
- In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
- This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
- The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:32](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: appoint, redeem, castout)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:16](#); [8:18](#); [9:3](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#))

## serpent, snake, viper

### Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), Eden, [evil](#), prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), tempt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:3](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:5](#))



## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, appoint)

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:17](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:21](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [dishonor](#), accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), [humble](#), Isaiah, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:2](#); [7:14](#); [9:4](#); [10:8](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:12](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5 General Notes](#); [5:21](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [11:7](#); [12:21](#); [13:2](#))



## slander, slanderers, revile, insult

### Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:8](#); [12:20](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), ancestor, [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:7](#); [3:13](#))

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), ancestor, [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:19](#))

## sons of God, children of God

### Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:18](#))

## soul, self, person

### Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:23; 12:15](#))

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:13](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [4:13](#); [7:1](#); [7:13](#); [11:4](#); [12:18](#))

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:25](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:10](#))**

## stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

### Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), refuge, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:4
- 2 Kings 8:10-12
- 2 Samuel 5:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 1:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 10:4](#))

## stumbling block, stone of stumbling

### Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:3](#))

## submit, submission, in submission

### Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: subject)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 3:1
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G52260, G52930

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:13](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.



## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, [Holy Spirit](#), tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:16](#))

## tent, tentmakers

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Canaan, curtain, [Paul](#), Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:1](#); [5:4](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 8:8](#); [8:22](#); [13:5](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), prophet, [true](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [1:23](#); [8:3](#); [13:1](#))

## thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

### Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [crime](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [Samaria](#), [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:26](#))



## thorn, thorn bush, thistle

### Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:7](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:2](#); [8:14](#))

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: appoint, [believe](#), [church](#), Greek, [minister](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:2
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- Acts 16:3
- Colossians 1:1
- Philemon 1:1
- Philippians 1:1
- Philippians 2:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G50950

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [1:19](#))

## Titus

### Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: appoint, [believe](#), [church](#), circumcise, Crete, elder, [encourage](#), instruct, [minister](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:10
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Titus 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G51030

(**Go back to:** [2 Corinthians 2:13](#); [7:6](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [8:6](#); [8:16](#); [8:23](#); [12:18](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [4:1](#); [5:18](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [8:4](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [9:1](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [11:8](#); [11:15](#); [11:23](#))

## torment, tormented, tormentors

### Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 12:7](#))

## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:15](#))

## trespass

### Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 5:19](#))



## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), teach, wrath)

### Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:4](#); [1:8](#); [2:4](#); [4:17](#); [6:4](#); [7:4](#); [8:2](#))

## Troas

### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [preach](#), province, [raise](#), Rome, scroll, [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 2:13
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 16:8
- Acts 20:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G51740

([Go back to: 2 Corinthians 2:12](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:6](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *\_true\_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *\_true\_* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:2](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [7:14](#); [11:10](#); [12:6](#); [13:8](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:9](#))

## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:16](#))



## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:13](#); [1:14](#); [10:12](#))

## veil, veiled, unveiled

### Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 11:2](#))

## vision, envision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:1](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 4:2](#); [5:7](#); [6:16](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [12:18](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:1](#); [8:5](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [11:19](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7



- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God.**"
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word.**
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God.**
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:17](#); [4:2](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 9:8](#); [10:11](#); [11:15](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 1:12](#); [5:19](#); [7:10](#))

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: honor)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 2:16](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:2](#); [7:12](#); [12:13](#); [13:7](#))

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 12:2](#))

## yoke, yoked, tied

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, [burden](#), oppress, [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 6:14](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [2 Corinthians 7:7](#); [7:11](#); [9:2](#))



# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Kailey Gregory  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Robert Hunt



Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)